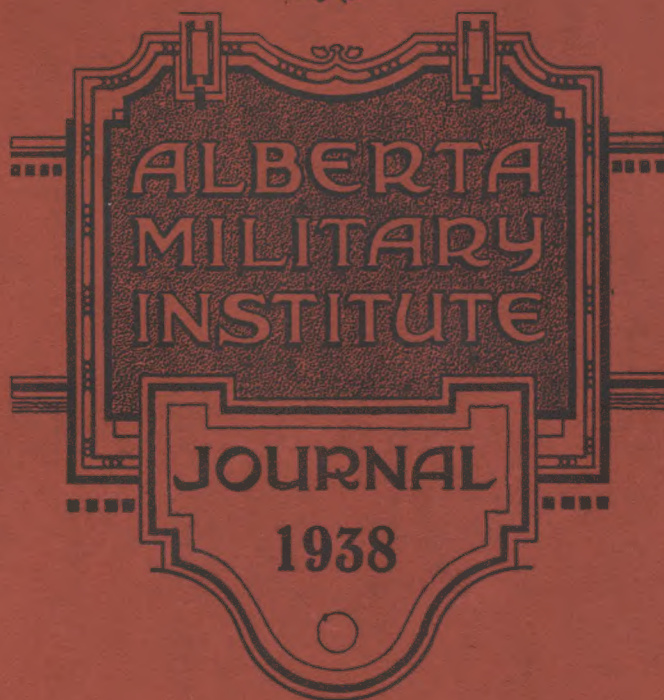




Published Annually by  
**The Alberta Military Institute**  
Incorporated  
Calgary, Alberta

KB 16241

Ex LIBRIS  
UNIVERSITATIS  
ALBERTAENSIS



2496349

1932  
1938

NC

FOR  
*Calgary*  
-the  
**MEDAL**  
RAGE!

CALGARY  
DRY  
GINGERALE  
The  
and  
Exp  
LIN



Insist on the genuine  
**HORSESHOE AND BUFFALO BRAND**  
—The emblem distinguishing the  
products of

**Calgary Brewing & Malting Company Limited**

ESTABLISHED IN 1892



Published Annually by

**The Alberta Military Institute**  
Incorporated  
Calgary, Alberta

## **In Memoriam**

---

**Lieut. L. A. Walsh**

**Lieut.-Col. A. E. C. MacDonell**

**Lieut.-Col. W. A. Lyndon**

# The Alberta Military Institute

(Incorporated 1920)

Executive Offices: c/o Headquarters Military District No. 13

## CALGARY

---

### PATRONS

His Excellency The Governor-General of Canada  
His Honor The Lieutenant-Governor of Alberta  
The Right Hon. W. L. Mackenzie King, C.M.G., P.C., M.A., LL.B., LL.D., M.P.,  
Prime Minister of Canada.  
Hon. Col. The Right Hon. R. B. Bennett, E.D., P.C., K.C., LL.B., LL.D., M.P.  
The Hon. Ian A. MacKenzie, P.C., M.A., LL.B., M.P., Minister of National Defence  
Major-General T. V. Anderson, D.S.O., Chief of the General Staff  
Major-General H. H. Matthews, C.M.G., D.S.O., Adjutant-General  
Lieut.-Gen. Sir A. C. Macdonell, K.C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O.  
Major-General A. H. Bell, C.M.G., D.S.O.  
Major-General the Hon. W. A. Griesbach, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., V.D.  
Colonel G. E. Sanders, C.M.G., D.S.O.

### HONORARY PRESIDENT

Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C., District Officer Commanding,  
Military District No. 13

### HONORARY VICE-PRESIDENTS

|                                           |                               |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Colonel D. G. L. Cunningham, M.C., V.D.   | Major J. W. Littleton, M.C.   |
| Lieut.-Colonel D. Ritchie, M.C.           | Lieut.-Colonel H. Pryde       |
| Lieut. H. C. Farthing                     | Lieut.-Colonel N. D. Dingle   |
| Colonel E. R. Knight, V.D.                | Colonel H. C. A. Hervey, V.D. |
| Lieut.-Col. D. H. Tomlinson, M.B.E., V.D. |                               |

---

### OFFICERS FOR 1939

#### PRESIDENT:

Captain H. G. Nolan, M.C.

#### VICE-PRESIDENT:

Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Cooper-Johnston, M.C., V.D.

#### HONORARY SECRETARY:

Major A. J. Davis

#### TREASURER:

Lieut. S. L. Miller

#### DIRECTORS:

|                              |                                          |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Major J. U. Acton            | Capt F. H. Johnson, M.C.                 |
| Lieut. T. W. Collinge        | Lieut.-Colonel R. Nash                   |
| Major P. V. Harcourt, D.C.M. | Lieut.-Colonel E. R. Selby, D.S.O., V.D. |
| Major H. E. Wright           |                                          |

#### HONORARY CHAPLAIN:

Hon. Capt. Rev. Alexander Patterson

#### HONORARY LIBRARIAN:

Lieut. L. E. Lick

**1938 Annual Journal**  
of  
**THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE**  
(Incorporated)

CALGARY, ALBERTA

MAJOR A. C. BALLANTINE, R.C.A., Editor

LIEUT. M. H. ROBINSON, Advertising Manager

LIEUT. S. L. MILLER, Business Manager

---

Nineteenth Year

December, 1938

---

The Alberta Military Institute does not hold itself responsible for the opinions expressed by speakers and reported herein, and no official opinions are given.

**CONTENTS**

|                                                                                                                 | Page |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Current Problems in Empire Defence—Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C. ....                             | 1    |
| Canada, the Empire and the Commonwealth—Major-General the Honourable W. A. Griesbach, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O. .... | 14   |
| The Effect of Mechanization on the Role of Cavalry—Major G. R. Bradbrooke, M.C. ....                            | 25   |
| A Private in the Guards—Rev. Dudley F. Kemp ....                                                                | 38   |
| Outpost—Captain J. H. R. Thomson ....                                                                           | 48   |
| The Sino-Japanese Conflict—E. D. Arnold ....                                                                    | 60   |
| Recent Military Developments—Lieut.-Col. G. C. Bucknall, M.C. ....                                              | 72   |
| Boys of the Old Brigade—The Editor ....                                                                         | 76   |
| Empire Service as Illustrated by the Work of the Royal Empire Society and Imperial Institute ....               | 79   |
| Daniel O'Connell—Hon. Mr. Justice Ewing ....                                                                    | 87   |
| Sweden—P. R. Breckon, B.Sc. ....                                                                                | 101  |
| New Uses for Farm Products—D. G. McKenzie ....                                                                  | 110  |
| With the Imperial Cavalry from a N.C.O.'s Point of View—Lieut. A. J. Cawthorne ....                             | 120  |
| Recent Books—Major C. A. Lyndon ....                                                                            | 134  |
| Work of the Canadian Legion—W. Bullard, President, Calgary Branch, Canadian Legion, B.E.S.L. ....               | 139  |
| Annual General Meeting ....                                                                                     | 144  |
| Financial Statement ....                                                                                        | 159  |
| Membership List ..                                                                                              | 161  |



## Problems in Empire Defence

*By Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C.*

---

An Address to the Annual Vimy Commemoration Dinner, 9th April, 1938.

---

TODAY the Alberta Military Institute is celebrating the Anniversary of the Battle of Vimy Ridge, which was fought by the Canadian Corps on the 9th of April, 1917. Many distinguished speakers at Vimy dinners since that date have dealt with the various phases of those operations.

This evening I desire to call attention to another event which happened during the spring of 1917. I refer to the Imperial War Conference which was held in London during March and April of that year, with the Secretary of State for the Colonies (Mr. Walter Long) in the chair. The Dominion delegates included Sir R. Borden and Mr. Massey, prime ministers of Canada and New Zealand, and General Smuts, minister of defence, from South Africa. The address to H. M. King George V., which was submitted at the close of the Conference included the following:

We have further in our Imperial War Conference considered the steps which may be required to ensure that the fruits of victory may not be lost by unpreparedness in time of peace and so to develop the resources of the Empire that it may not be possible hereafter for an unscrupulous enemy to repeat his outrages upon liberty and civilization.

As was to be expected, the recommendations of the Imperial War Conference of 1917, designed to prevent any future war which would seriously threaten the existence of the Empire, were not put into effect in the period of false prosperity and lavish spending which immediately followed the cessation of hostilities.

At the Imperial Conference of 1921 the question of disarmament first made itself felt and important questions regarding the defence of the Empire were "deferred until after the Conference on Disarmament".

The Washington Conference took place in 1922 and since that date the peace loving democracies have sought in vain for some formula that would provide an alternative method of settling international disputes to that of armed conflict. "The price of disarmament is security", said Lord Cecil of Chelwood, when he returned from Geneva in December, 1930. "We have little more than a year in which to make up our minds whether we will pay that price or not", he added.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE International Disarmament Conference was held in February, 1932. Stress was laid on the "example" of disarmament which Great Britain had set before the world. There was some criticism of the disarmament proposals made by the French Government which insisted upon security as the condition of disarmament and even of M. Andre Tardieu's suggestion for an international police force. Someone dared to ask what would happen if the international police force ever met defeat.

With the idea of an international police force I cannot now deal, though it belongs to the history of the search for security against war. The whole story of that search since the end of the Great War is shot through with reservations and hesitations.

The various methods by which Britain sought to establish permanent peace may be summarized as follows:

1. Support of the League of Nations.
2. Efforts to produce collective security and a sense of security, e.g.:
  - (a) The Briand Kellogg Pact of 1928, renouncing war as an instrument of policy.
  - (b) The Quadruple Pacific Treaty and the Nine Power Treaty regarding the Far East.
  - (c) The Geneva Protocol and the Locarno Treaties.
3. Efforts to effect the reduction and limitation of armaments.

Public opinion at one time began to assume that nothing was required for the maintenance of peace except the international political machinery and that the older methods of defence—navies, armies and air forces were no longer required.

The course of world events has now shown that this assumption is premature and that the world has far to go before nations can find complete security without having in the background the means of defending themselves against attack.

Recent events in various parts of the world have shown that some nations are still prepared to use or to threaten to use force under the influence of what their leaders conceive to be a national necessity; and experience has shown that once action has been taken the political machinery for the maintenance of peace cannot be relied upon as a protection against aggressors.

While Great Britain set the noble example in disarmament and endeavoured to live up to treaty obligations and limitations, other powers were arming apace. May I record at this juncture a short quotation from the official findings of the Imperial Conference of 1937:

The members of the conference noted with deep concern that since the session of 1930 international tension had increased



in a marked degree and that there had been a large and rapid increase in the armaments of all the principal powers.

They (the members of that Conference) were "impressed by the world-wide effect of these increased armaments" and thought it "of the highest importance that negotiations for the limitation of armaments should be re-opened whenever there was a reasonable prospect of success". However, they recognized with regret that international conditions were not at the moment favourable to further progress in the direction of disarmament'.

Five years ago the re-armament of Germany had hardly gone beyond its initial stages. Who had heard of Deutschlands and pocket battleships? Who could have believed that the small German Army of three Cavalry and seven Infantry Divisions which existed when Hitler first came into power in 1933 could have expanded to 39 divisions, fully recruited and equipped by the end of 1936, and that this regular army is supported by another 39 first line reserve divisions armed and equipped with modern weapons and transport?

By a decree of August, 1936, compulsory service was increased from one to two years, consequently the trained man-power of Germany may be estimated as now being 700,000 in the active army and approximately 2,000,000 reservists. Again who would have believed that a country which by treaty was not allowed any military aircraft could have developed an air force with between 3,000 and 4,000 first line aircraft in the space of the last five years?

\* \* \* \* \*

NOR FIVE YEARS AGO had Italy's re-armament attained a level at all comparable to its present scale. Signor Mussolini's boast that he can mobilize 8,000,000 trained men at any moment could not then have been uttered.

The Italian air force was at that date being increased., still a prediction that by the summer of 1937 Italy would have had some 150 squadrons in an Independent Air Force, exclusive of the air arms of the Army, Navy and Colonial forces, would have been considered as verging upon absurdity.

\* \* \* \* \*

WHEN the disarmament conference came to a standstill, the British Government initiated a programme to recondition her defence forces so that the Old Country and the Empire might possess an adequate standard of defence, that the sea communications should be secure so that food could be brought to her peoples and the principal cities and their population might be defended against air attack. In other words, the security of the British Isles and the maintenance of sea communications are considered of paramount importance. Reluctantly Britain is re-arming.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

The Navy is, and it always has been, the first line of defence for the maintenance of the essential sea communications. So long as the Navy is strong enough to perform this task and the other Services are equipped to co-operate in the defence of ports, the food supplies will be safeguarded, the members of the British Commonwealth of Nations will be able to render each other mutual support to the extent that each may decide and the trade of the Empire will be maintained.

The Main Fleet is the basis upon which British Naval strategy rests and the tactical pivot of the Main Fleet is the battleship. These must remain vital units in Britain's defence organization, at any rate, so long as other nations are capable of using such ships against her. The age of Britain's battleships has rendered it necessary to commence their replacement.

Of the twelve battleships in commission in the Royal Navy only two, the Nelson and the Rodney, have been completed since the Great War. These two vessels were laid down in 1922 and completed in 1927. Note it takes five years to build a modern battleship. All the other British battleships fought in the Battle of Jutland twenty years ago. Two other vessels, the King George V. and the Prince of Wales, were laid down in 1937; no doubt these will be completed about 1940-41.

Thus Great Britain has twelve battleships and three battle cruisers built and two battleships building. France has six battleships built and two building; Japan has nine battleships afloat, but has, since the expiration of the Washington Naval Limitation Treaty, refused to disclose her building programme. Germany has three old battleships, three new armoured ships of the Deutschland class, sometimes referred to as pocket battleships, and two new battle cruisers afloat; while Italy has six battleships, two of which—the Vittoria Veneto and the Littorio are just completed. In addition to the capital ships and the cruisers, etc., which form a part of the Main Fleet, a considerable number of cruisers are required in the British Navy to deal with detached enemy units making sporadic attacks on territories and trade.

In this connection it is interesting to note the number of submarines built or building at the end of the last year by the various powers:

|                     |    |
|---------------------|----|
| Great Britain ..... | 65 |
| France .....        | 83 |
| Japan .....         | 62 |
| Germany .....       | 40 |
| Italy .....         | 88 |

The task, therefore, as I see it, that the Admiralty must face at the present time is that of maintaining naval forces capable of:

- (i) Neutralizing in home waters any hostile fleet.

- (ii) Sending a fleet to the Far East which would be capable of acting defensively. Although this fleet might not in the early stages of a war be strong enough to act offensively it must be capable of preventing aggression against British interests in the Far East, in Australia and in the Indian Ocean.
- (iii) Protecting our lines of communication at the same time as fulfil the above requirements.

\* \* \* \* \*

**F**OR THE TIME BEING Britain may have lost her sea supremacy because, although she has started rebuilding, her potential enemies have also started creating modern fleets. Building cannot be accomplished quickly and deficiencies cannot be replaced immediately; therefore, British Statesmen must of necessity speak and act with great caution at the present time.

\* \* \* \* \*

**I**T IS TRUE that the British Empire depends upon sea power, but the navy itself depends to some extent upon land forces. Ships cannot be at sea all the time. They have to come into harbour. They have to be assured of safety when they are refitting and re-fuelling. The bases to which they return must be protected from land and air attack. And so, just as the Empire is held together by the protection which the Navy affords to the trade routes, just as

**A. E. YEATMAN**

**Military Tailor**

— to —

R.C.M.P. C.A.S.C. 13 DIV. SIGNALS  
CALGARY REGT. CALGARY HIGHLANDERS  
15 C.L.H. and C.A.M.C.

*From Sarcee Days to Date the Outstanding  
Military Tailor of the West*

**11 Mackie Block  
Eighth Avenue West - Calgary**

these trade routes are like the steel girders which hold together a great edifice, so these bases and fuelling stations form the joints and hinges of the vast structure of the British Empire.

The maintenance of these overseas garrisons for the defence of these ports is perhaps the first purpose for which the British Regular Army exists. Too little is known about this great work which the Army annually performs. Every year the troopships go out unannounced with their drafts of cavalry, artillery, engineers and infantry. They stop first at Gibraltar, the gateway of the Mediterranean, where, in addition to artillery and engineers, two battalions are stationed.

They pass on to Malta, where the normal garrison is four battalions, with artillery and engineers.

They pass on to Egypt and to the Sudan where there is one cavalry and two infantry brigades and a tank battalion.

A small detachment is left in the Island of Cyprus.

Then down through the Suez Canal. (By treaty with Egypt, Great Britain may retain 10,000 all ranks for the defence of this vital link.) And so through the Red Sea to emerge into the Indian Ocean at Aden where another small garrison is maintained.

Thousands of miles to the south, British troops guard the Island of Mauritius.

Continuing eastward the vital ports of India and Ceylon, Colombo and Trincomali, are defended and further east to Malaya and Singapore and so on to China, where at Hong Kong and other ports six battalions are stationed.

Even then the troopships have not completed the orbit of the Empire, for the fuelling stations on the South African route, Free-town and St. Helena, must be guarded lest the Mediterranean route be closed and shipping diverted round the Cape of Good Hope.

There is yet one more battalion guarding the Western Hemisphere at Jamaica and Bermuda.

The strength of these garrisons is governed by the principle that, wherever sea communications are liable to interruption, the garrison should be maintained in peace at a strength adequate for its defence at the outbreak of war.

At the present time the defences of many of these ports need modernizing; besides providing for the improvement and installation of their coast defences, provision must also be made for a large expansion in their anti-aircraft defences.

\* \* \* \* \*

THAT IS ONLY ONE of the purposes for which the Army exists. Another is the defence of certain frontiers and the maintenance of order in certain territories where Great Britain has undertaken a serious obligation. By far the most important of these is India. In comparison with the size of the British Army, India occupies an enormous proportion of her forces but in comparison as to the size of the native population and the work they have to do the number of troops is infinitely small.

The Army in India is divided into three parts, the covering troops for the protection of the Northwest frontier, about 12 brigades; the field army of approximately four Cavalry Brigades and four divisions and the Internal Security Troops. In all there are some 46 British Infantry Battalions in India and a corresponding proportion of other arms and artillery services.

In Egypt, in the Sudan, in Palestine and in the African colonies there are units stationed to maintain the "Pax Britannica."

The dispatch overseas of reinforcements in war is now complicated by new risks of interference. These larger concentrations provide regional strategic reserves in zones whence they might be directed most rapidly without incurring serious risks in sea transport to those alternative places whose security is most likely to be threatened .

\* \* \* \* \*

THIRDLY, and I make no attempt to enumerate the tasks in any order of merit, the Army exists for the protection of the British Isles. There is, obviously nothing of greater importance than the protection of the centre and heart of the Empire, its arsenal and its main reserve of man power.

In introducing the Army estimates Mr. Hore-Belisha placed Home Defence "in the first category of importance". He laid emphasis on the fact that on the outbreak of war, defence against air attack might be "the primary requirement". Home defence, he continued, would also have to take account of internal security problems in connection with air raid precautions. Thus for the first time the new risk of internal breakdown under sudden pressure of air attack is recognized and provision is to be made for a large and well distributed force to maintain order and clear communications under these circumstances.

Many of the duties in connection with Home Defence have been taken over by the Territorial Army, the corresponding organization in Great Britain to the Non-Permanent Active Militia in Canada. Two Territorial Army divisions have been converted into anti-aircraft divisions for the defence of London.

As more anti-aircraft equipment becomes available more Territorial Army divisions will undoubtedly be required to extend the air defences of Great Britain to include the industrial centres in the North and in the Midlands.

Territorial Army artillery units have assumed the responsibility for manning the coast defence batteries, and for precautionary measures designed for the protection of the civil population and for safeguarding essential services against bombing attacks from the air.

In addition to the three purposes which I have already mentioned the army has to provide a force which may be called upon to defend the interests of the Empire beyond the shores of Great Britain, perhaps in Imperial territory, perhaps in some foreign land; a force which may be called upon to fight in a country which nobody can foretell and under conditions which nobody can foresee. This force would also have to co-operate in the defence of the territories of any allies which Great Britain might have in the event of war.

In 1914 Great Britain had a force of six divisions and two cavalry brigades available for just such a purpose as this.

There are no Old Contemptibles, no Expeditionary Forces available today. After supplying all the requirements to which I have already referred it is unlikely that the units which are left over could form more than two weak divisions, judged by the standards of the Great War.

But machine power, not man power, is the more correct gauge of strength in a modern army. The strength of a Navy is assessed in ships and not in number of sailors. Thus the strength of a modern army is based not so much on the individual soldier but rather on fire units which combine fire power with mobility. Every man beyond the minimum required to operate a weapon or a vehicle is an additional target and an additional embarrassment to the supply services in the rear.

Having appreciated the significance of changing conditions the General Staff at the War Office is carrying out a re-organization of the British formations whereby a reduction of personnel to the minimum will produce a greater number of divisions of a handier and more effective type. One type will be a motorized division based on the light machine gun, the other a mechanized armoured division based on the tank. Each battalion of a motorized division is to possess 50 Bren guns, each fire unit of artillery is to be increased from six to twelve guns.

If inadequately equipped or without sufficient reserves of ammunition, the Army would be exposed to heavy loss, suffering and possible disaster.

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**HIS YEAR'S ARMY ESTIMATES are very heavy, the highest by far since the war. Satisfactory progress in so far as material is concerned is being shown and the full effect of last year's planning is beginning to be felt. The factories have been working hard to turn out the various new guns, anti-aircraft and ground, and the light Bren guns.

New tanks are beginning to poke their noses out of the workshops and great progress has been made with the supply of vehicles. This is one of the hardest problems that the War Office has to face, for they must always in this connection keep in very close touch with civilian developments and needs. The munition reserve is to go up and up and there is also to be a reserve of petrol in the future.

The progress of science and the march of modern developments in civil life have made necessary many changes in army equipment. It is inevitable that there must be a long lapse of time between design and production. Although new weapons were approved over a year ago these weapons are only now just beginning to reach the troops. The troops themselves must be trained not only in the handling of each new weapon, but also in its tactical employment in conjunction with other new weapons. In the meantime it must be remembered that the reservists were trained in a horsed army, not a mechanized one, and with weapons that are now obsolete.

The situation with regard to personnel is not quite so satisfactory. The establishment of the Regular Army is to be increased slightly to 170,000. This is still a great deal below what it was in 1914.

Two new infantry battalions have been raised and there is to be a new tank battalion formed this year. But the Army is still seriously under strength—about 1,200 officers and some 22,000 other ranks. On the other hand recruiting figures have been going up. Last year's intake was 28,500 compared with 22,800 the year before. Even to arrive at this improvement the Regular Army has had to face what is officially termed "an adjustment of medical standards". The truth of the matter is that recruiting is, as yet, far from satisfactory and improvements in conditions of service which will make the Army into a more attractive career are being introduced.

Recruiting for the Territorial Army for the past year has been fairly satisfactory. It is stronger by 16,514 than it was a year ago and its status has been enhanced in the last year.

The Royal Air Force has, as its principle role, to provide (with the co-operation of ground defences) for the protection of the United Kingdom, and particularly London, against air attack. It also provides air forces for general defence purposes in the Middle East, India and the Far East, as well as for co-operation in coast defence and in addition furnishes specially trained and equipped squadrons for co-operation with the Army.

The range of territory in the continent of Europe from which air attack could be launched against Great Britain is extending, and, if in war an enemy were in possession of the countries bordering the Channel the area of Great Britain liable to attacks would be still further increased.





"Did you say 'oi'?"  
"Yes — 'oi' want a Sweet Cap!"

## **SWEET CAPORAL CIGARETTES**

*"The purest form in which tobacco can be smoked."*

The weight of attack would be much greater, owing to quicker turn round of the bombers and their increased bomb load at shorter ranges. The increase in speed, range and height of modern aircraft accentuates the difficulty of obtaining warning in time to bring defensive aircraft into action in favourable conditions, but this side of defense has not been overlooked. Modern bombers have a radius of action of five to six hundred miles, a cruising speed of over two hundred miles an hour and a bomb load of 1,000 to 1,500 pounds.

To fulfil these roles Britain's re-armament programme aims at producing in March, 1939, a Metropolitan Air Force of 129 squadrons with a total strength of 1,750 first line aircraft. First line strength is the term applied to those aircraft with which a formation is normally equipped ready to take the air at any given time. It does not include training or reserve aircraft.

R.A.F. units allotted for the Home Defence of Great Britain are divided into three commands, the Fighter Command which consists of thirty squadrons of single and two seater machines of the Spitfire and Gladiator types; which would be employed to intercept enemy raiders; a Bomber Command consisting of 68 bomber squadrons—the role of this command is offensive action to neutralize whatever hostile action the enemy is taking by land, sea or air; and a Coastal Command consisting of Torpedo Bombers, General Reconnaissance and Flying Boat Squadrons.

In addition to the increased numbers of existing types of aircraft, production orders have been placed with manufacturers for many new types of bomber and fighter aircraft. To assist in the supply of the large numbers of aircraft and engines required in time of war arrangements have been made to establish a "shadow" aircraft and aero engine industry. To this end certain firms in the motor industry are erecting factories on Government account. As these are completed, orders will be placed and the firms will obtain valuable educational experience in the production of air frames and aero engines.

After supplying the immediate needs of the Service, the factories will not be required to function further until a real war emergency develops. They will, therefore, be closed down, but will be kept on a well maintained basis ready to be put into operation on short notice.

\* \* \* \* \*

**R**E-ARMAMENT has provided almost a dress rehearsal for industrial mobilization and many valuable lessons have been learned.

In addition to the Metropolitan Air Force for Home Defence, the Royal Air Force maintains squadrons for general defence purposes overseas. At Malta there is a Flying Boat Squadron. In the Middle East one Army Co-operation Squadron, six Bomber Squad-

rons and one Bomber Transport Squadron; at Aden one Bomber and one General Reconnaissance, in Iraq five squadrons, India eight and at Singapore six squadrons.

A few weeks ago Sir Thomas Inskip, Minister of Co-ordination of Defence, stated that a further progressive expansion of the Air Force had been approved. This is to be brought about both by increasing the number of squadrons and the size of the individual squadrons.

There have been doubts expressed in Parliament as to whether or not the expansion programme was being lived up to. What was promised in 1936 was that there would be 1,500 first line machines by March, 1937, and 1,750 machines by March, 1939.

The 1,500 machines were in fact available by July, 1937, and we have the Minister's recent assurance that the 1,750 will be available by March next year, and that these machines, unlike those promised by March, 1937, would be up-to-date machines and relative to the best possessed by other nations, with the highest possible standard of power and capacity.

Of course "first line" strength is only one of a number of factors which go to make up air power and air strength. Among the others are reserves of aircraft, of bombs and equipment, the war potential which could be used in aircraft or bombs; the access to raw materials, the value of anti-aircraft defence, the personnel and moral of the force, and the training, racial temperament and characteristics of the pilots. The final deciding factor is the number of machines which the Air Force of any country can put into action on a given date and can keep in action is respect to both personnel and material, month after month, in spite of the enormous wastage which is bound to occur.

To this end it is essential to have large reserves of aircraft, material and personnel. It would be of little value to have a first line strength which could not be maintained and which might disappear after the first engagements. For instance a squadron might easily have a wastage equal to its first line strength in the first few weeks of a war.

Therefore reserves of say four or five times the first line strength of all units are required in order to bridge the gap between the outbreak of war and such time as industry can change to war production in order to meet the inevitable losses.

\* \* \* \* \*

**G**ERMANY HAS MADE new types on a great scale. She has at the moment an air force at least double that of Great Britain and it is probably still being expanded at a quicker rate.

Germany aims at building up an air force which will be just as efficient as her army. Field Marshal Goering, the German Air

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

Minister, recently recently said of the German Air Force "that it was invincible and ruthless".

It is the aim of the British Government, as indeed it is of all Governments of the Empire, to promote peace, but in the present troubled state of the world, it is realized that armaments cannot be dispensed with. They are required to preserve peace, to maintain security and to deter aggression.

Britain has deliberately, in order to set an example to the rest of the world, brought her armaments below the level required for the fulfilment of these objects.

Vast sums of money have now had to be voted to expenditure on the armaments of the three defence services. There is every indication that the total national expenditure during the next financial year will be well over the 1,000,000,000 figure.

At the moment England is not in the position to supply the Dominions with the same degree of security as she has been able to do in times gone by.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE GOVERNMENT of this Dominion has considered it necessary to increase its defence appropriations, but the mere voting of sums of money does not provide security. Freedom and security cannot be purchased except by sacrifice. The sacrifice required at the present time is that the younger men of the Provinces should fit themselves to follow, if necessary, in the footsteps of you veterans, by devoting a proportion of their leisure in the evening to military exercises at their unit's local headquarters, and, for the more senior and established citizens to grant facilities for their employees to attend the week or ten days training camp this summer.

These are most disturbing times, with the international situation full of tremendous possibilities of danger and disaster. Public opinion in Canada today is in favour of taking reasonable measures for the defence of Canada and I would ask all present here tonight to play their part and to encourage others to do the same.

The public and the Militia have not always been one in outlook. The Militia has not always really enjoyed the goodwill of the public, the public knows little of the Militia, of the work that it does, of the voluntary contributions of time and money made by the officers and men.

It may be that the Militia has some ground to give, but it is my belief that the units of this district meet the public more than half way and it is the public which still holds back. Do you business and professional men realize the need? In this room there are numbers of gentlemen who can influence, for good or for evil, the status which the Militia occupies in the public esteem. Will you give the Militia units of this province your wholehearted support? Will you help me to build up their numbers and increase their efficiency?

## Canada, The Empire and the Commonwealth

*By Major General the Honourable W. A. Griesbach,  
C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O.*

---

ONE OF OUR EMINENT HISTORIANS tells us that there have been three British Empires. The first Empire came to an end with the secession of what is now the United States. The Second Empire then came into existence largely influenced by the experience gained from the American incident. In this period we see the great and continued extension of responsible government finally ending in Sovereignty. The Statute of Westminster then brought the Second Empire to an end.

Men of our generation were brought up to think and speak about the British Empire as all that part of the earth's surface over which the Union Jack flies and over which the King reigns. Since the passing of The Statute of Westminster we have to revise our views and nomenclature. Under that Statute a new entity came into existence, namely: The British Commonwealth of Nations consisting of five constituent parts, the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. The Irish Free State or Eire is either in or out of the Commonwealth, depending pretty much on how Mr. deValera happens to feel that day. These constituent parts are declared to be free, equal and sovereign, bound together by a common allegiance to a common Sovereign and not subject one to another in any aspect of their external or internal affairs. Collectively they are referred to as the British Commonwealth of Nations.

Now, the British Empire is another entity. It consists of the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland plus India, Newfoundland and all the other colonies and dependencies scattered all over the world and in various stages of political development. You will observe that the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland appears in both the Commonwealth and in the Empire. In the Commonwealth she is equal, free and sovereign with the other constituent parts. In the Empire she is paramount and all parts of the Empire are subordinate to her. All this constitutes a first-class headache for the constitutional lawyers and foreigners cannot make head or tail of it, but it is logical enough if one studies our history and realizes how things have moved forward in our own lifetime and especially so if we look forward a bit into the future. For instance Kenya, North and South Rhodesia and Tanganyika may some day have the necessary population, communications and wealth to form a self-

governing Dominion. When that day comes an Imperial Statute conferring independence, equality and sovereignty will be passed and this new Dominion will move out of the Empire into the Commonwealth. Some day India may attain to Dominion status. She too will pass out of the Empire into the Commonwealth. After all, this is a very natural process and exactly parallels the family life of our people. The sons and daughters grow up and set up families of their own. They are free, equal, masters of their own destinies and are not subordinate in any respect of their relations to each other. They are, however, bound together by certain common ties and mutual interests and by natural love and affection. This emergence of new states within the Commonwealth also emphasizes the principle of trusteeship which the mother nation of Great Britain has manifested with respect to her migrating children and all those races and people who have fallen under her sway.

Is this not a real League of Nations and is it wholly beyond all reasonable speculation that other nations now outside the family may find it in their interests and ours as well to join with us in this Commonwealth to establish in this war-weary and war-threatened world the rule of law and justice and common decency?

\* \* \* \* \*

**H**ERE IT SHOULD BE OBSERVED that these developments have taken place gradually and logically from precedent to precedent. Scores of statesmen in their day and generation have made their contributions and passed on, but through it all it is to be noted that Great Britain has played the part of trustee, guide and mentor. The Statute of Westminster marks the culmination of principles and policies that cover a century or more. Today we are sovereign, free and equal, bound together by a common allegiance to a common Sovereign. We are the masters of our own fate. If we or any other state in the Commonwealth desire now or later to sever the last link, namely the allegiance to the common Sovereign, we are also free to go, and Great Britain least of all will offer obstacles to our going. This being so, the question is: shall we remain within the Commonwealth or shall we leave it? What are the advantages and disadvantages of either course and what are the factors that govern? I venture to assert that there is no large or important body of public opinion in Canada which favours secession from the Commonwealth.

For the purpose of this discussion the population of Canada may be divided into three sections:

- |                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| (a) The British element ..... | 50% |
| (b) The French element .....  | 30% |
| (c) The Foreign element ..... | 20% |

(a) **The British element—50%.** I will assert that under normal conditions the British element accepts the conception of a United Commonwealth with all that it implies. Under conditions of war,

threatened or actual, or other stress, this element would become extremely vocal and if opposition is offered possibly rudely violent. This element controls the finance and trade of Canada. It is in possession of the key offices in Government, in the armed forces and all public enterprises. It is motivated not only by practical considerations of national well-being but as well by sentiments of chivalry, race pride, linguistic solidarity and other spiritual values. which, if they seem to be vague and imponderable in peace, are nevertheless mighty forces in war, as all history testifies.

(b) **The French element—30%.** The French element approaches the question from a different point of view. This element has lost most of its ties with France. It considers itself to be a product of Canadian soil. It prides itself upon putting Canada first to the exclusion of every other loyalty but it may be doubted whether the loyalty of the mass of the French Canadians goes much beyond the Province of Quebec in actual fact, for outside of that province the French element faces an overwhelming English speaking majority. There are, of course, exceptions to the general rule, for there are French Canadians who accept the conception of a United Canada and the further conception of a United Commonwealth. There are, however, two factors of outstanding importance in evaluating the French attitude which cannot be overlooked and which under certain circumstances might prove decisive.

(1) The French Canadian is a devout Roman Catholic and that Church is a dominating fact in French Canadian life. It is to all intents and purposes a State Church in Quebec and enjoys in the rest of Canada equal status with all other religious bodies. At this moment the Roman Catholic Church stands in grave danger in Germany. Not for 1,000 years has a cardinal of the Church been stoned by the rabble. In Italy the Church is at variance with the Fascist Government. In Russia it is suppressed. In no other part of the world is its position so strong and so assured as it is in the British Commonwealth and in the British Empire. These are considerations which the Roman Catholic Church in Canada must take into consideration and they are being taken into very careful consideration.

(2) Canada is not bi-lingual either by law or treaty, but Quebec is and as well the French language has equality in the Parliament of Canada and in the Supreme Court of Canada and of necessity and by custom in Dominion Government publications. If Canada became a part of the United States or were conquered by another language country these rights would vanish overnight and the well-informed French-Canadian knows it. As the situation in Europe develops and it becomes daily more apparent that we are approaching a struggle between the authoritarian states of Germany and Italy versus the democratic states of the British Commonwealth, France and possibly the United States it becomes necessary for Roman Catholicism to take a stand, and evidence accumulates that the leaders of

that Church have already made up their minds. The selection of the next Pope may indicate the direction of papal policy. He may not be an Italian. The alignment of the Roman Catholic continent of South America with the United States in a pact to oppose the authoritarian powers has received the papal blessing and is another indication of the direction of Church policy. That French Canada will be influenced by these developments cannot be doubted. Many French Canadians were not at all satisfied with the position taken by their leaders in the last war. They resented being put in the position of contributing to the disunity of Canada in a great emergency. They have not failed to observe that their attitude in the late war has been largely responsible for a certain dislike, if not contempt, on the part of their English speaking fellow citizens in the last twenty years. On the other hand all Canadian soldiers know that the French Canadians of the 22nd Battalion and in other units proved themselves to be courageous, resolute and energetic and in no respect inferior to their English speaking comrades.

To sum up then it is conceivable and devoutly to be hoped that, in the approaching conflict, French Canada will take her proper place in the national effort and should she do so her reward will be the affection and respect of all Canada. It may or may not be a curious thing but I do think I detect in the average English-speaking Canadian a genuine desire to be on terms of close intimacy, affection and respect with our French Canadian fellow citizens.

In war the French Canadian is a merry soul and those of us who have heard a rousing French Canadian chorus in the pelting rain on a muddy road in France at three o'clock in the morning never were in any doubt as to the quality of the men behind the harmony. If once there was established a comradeship in arms between those two races in Canada the question of Canadian unity would be solved for all time

(c) **The Foreign element—20%.** The foreign element is for the most part docile and timid and pleased to live quietly in Canada. It is learning to speak English and no other language. It is largely

**FOR YOUR HEALTH'S  
SAKE  
DRINK GOOD MILK**

**PRODUCERS &  
CONSUMERS MILK  
Co., Limited**

**With the Compliments of  
WILKINSON  
ELECTRIC CO. LTD.**

**129 - 7th Avenue West  
Calgary, Alberta**



advised, led and controlled by the British element. In this foreign element are 500,000 Germans and 100,000 Italians. It may be necessary to take some vigorous measures with respect to the German element in the matter of Nazi propaganda.

\* \* \* \* \*

**I**N THE PAST THREE YEARS a discussion has arisen in Canada on the question of Canada's right to be neutral when the rest or any part of the Commonwealth is at war. It would be putting it simpler to say Canada's right to be neutral when Great Britain is at war. In my view Canada's right to be neutral in such circumstances is inherent in our sovereignty. If we are a sovereign state one of the attributes of sovereignty is the right to be neutral or at war at our own will. We are a sovereign state now by The Statute of Westminster. It is a mere quibble to say that we are not sovereign by that statute because it is a statute passed by a legislature other than the Canadian legislature. In international relations such matters as status are likely to depend in any case not so much upon statutes as the will and the power to do and be. Therefore, I assert Canada's right to be neutral.

The next question is: would Canada's right to be neutral be recognized by foreign powers? That depends upon circumstances but mainly it depends upon armed strength. If we are weak and helpless we must take what is given to us. If we are ready and strong we will be treated with respect.

The right to neutrality is not the important question. What is important is the policy of neutrality. Could Canada be neutral in a war in which the Commonwealth was engaged and still remain within the Commonwealth? I think not. I think that the supreme test of the Commonwealth is the willingness and the readiness of the component parts to come to each other's aid in distress. It is this conception which gives the Commonwealth power and prestige and this in turn gave us and all the parts the real value of the Commonwealth. If the obligation to come to each other's aid does not exist there is no Commonwealth worthy of the name.

It is suggested, indeed it is urged, by persons in Canada—mainly professors in our universities—that Canada ought now on the question of the right to neutrality declare by statutory enactment our right to such neutrality and by formal diplomatic missions advise all parts of the Commonwealth and all foreign states of our right to be neutral. Here we have a political question of the first magnitude.

In the world today the nations are divided between two ideologies:

- (a) The authoritarian ideology
- (b) The democratic ideology.

The authoritarian ideology in turn grows out of their economic and other conditions. Germany and Italy, with Japan as well,

suffer from over-population, lack of raw materials, markets and the like, and need room for expansion. All three have adopted war as an instrument of national policy. Can there be in the circumstances any such thing as appeasement? I think not. The differences between these ideologies are fundamental. They touch the roots and mainsprings of national life; they involve matters of pride, dignity, prestige and racial survival, forms of government, conception of liberty, justice and individual well-being. For good or ill the decision has been made. The arbitrament of the sword alone remains. Hence the policy of armaments everywhere. It may be that we may yet have peace but if so the alternative must be international relationships based upon armed strength.

\* \* \* \* \*

**I**NTO THIS WORLD SITUATION it is seriously suggested that Canada should enter with a formal declaration of her right to neutrality when the rest of the Commonwealth is engaged in war or conducting its international relations upon the basis of armed strength. The immediate effect of such a declaration would be to weaken the democratic front and strengthen the authoritarian powers. The people of Canada may have their differences. They may not be well informed in international affairs, but they would not fail to grasp the significance of such a proposal. Such a declaration must be initiated and supported by the Government of the day. As a Conservative I could blame Mr. Mackenzie King for many acts of omission and commission. I have some doubt whether I shall ever be able to accuse him of having supplied his political opponents with a first-class issue on the eve of a general election.

If the question of Canada's right to neutrality is ever considered to be of such importance for such action as is suggested the proper time and place for it is a Commonwealth (Imperial) Conference. As to a policy of neutrality, this is a practical question; it is also a political question.

I believe that the acceptance of the conception of a United Commonwealth is deep rooted in Canada and will be supported by a substantial majority of the people of this country in any emergency that can now be foreseen. Further, I believe that it is more soundly based today than ever before. First, our past history. We have now established a certain economy upon an East and West system of transportation and development. An examination will disclose that all our cities and industries exist and can only hope to exist as they are upon the continuance of conditions as they are.

If, for instance, we became a part of the United States we should become a vast farm and our industries would fade away and our national life with all its spiritual values would become merged in that of the United States. Our people would not knowingly or willingly consent to that.

If we left the Commonwealth we should cease to occupy the proud position that we now do and would rank with Sweden, Portugal and Switzerland.

I assert that continuance in the Commonwealth holds out the prospect of protected growth and development along lines naturally suited to the foundation principles upon which our national structure has been reared. In the struggle in which the world is now entering we cannot be true to our past nor hopeful of our future unless we take our place in the Commonwealth and see this struggle through to a triumphant conclusion. Surely never in recent history has the issue between contending parties been so clear and seldom has the cause been so worthy.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE SO-CALLED Munich Agreement marked an important point of departure in world affairs. The world was confronted with a re-armed Germany intent upon retrieving all the losses of the Great War and further intent upon taking advantage of the favorable situation then existing, namely, the breakdown of the League of Nations and the unwillingness and the unpreparedness of the democratic nations for war. The issue of the Sudeten Germans was largely a manufactured issue. These particular Germans have not been a part of Germany proper for centuries and a large number of them had no particular desire to be so incorporated, but German propaganda took up the slack. The question was, would Hitler fight? The German colony in London were sure that he was bluffing and said so in letters to the press and resolutions passed at their meetings. The British and French governments evidently thought that Hitler would fight. They then had to consider their own readiness for a war which would tax their resources to even greater extent than the last war. The French air force was not ready, due largely to the labor situation in France produced by the Blum government, notably the 40-hour week. The French air equipment had been

#### INSTITUTE MEMBERSHIP

A hearty invitation to join the Alberta Military Institute is extended to officers and ex-officers of His Majesty's Sea, Land and Air Forces.

Full particulars of rates and privileges will be supplied on application to the Honorary Secretary, Alberta Military Institute, c/o Headquarters, Military District No. 13, Public Building, Calgary, Alberta.

allowed to depreciate and no new equipment was coming to hand. In Great Britain both the Regular and Territorial Armies were under strength and without adequate equipment; and in particular the air defence of London and other important centres was inadequate to the point of sketchiness. The British Air Force was probably equal to the task of defence but not for offensive action. In these circumstances the British and French governments chose peace.

It may or may not be significant of the morale these people—of their fighting spirit—of their capacity and their right to hold two vast world empires—to lead the democratic forces of the world—to stand up to the authoritarian states—that the decision for peace was received with tremendous relief, indeed enthusiasm, especially in the week following Munich.

It is now possible to evaluate Munich in a clever perspective.

To begin with Czecho-Slovakia with its forty divisions, potential allies, has for all practical purposes disappeared and her enormous mineral and industrial resources have fallen in the German orbit.

France has lost her whole system of Mid-European alliances and has suffered severely in prestige.

The Hitler regime and, to some extent, the Mussolini regime have been strengthened, as witness the insolence of both Germany and Italy in their dealings with both Great Britain and France. As a result of Germany having gained access to Eastern Europe with its minerals, grain, oil and other resources the effectiveness of a British naval blockade of Germany is greatly lessened. The small democratic countries of Europe are greatly alarmed. To save their skins they must throw in their lot with the strongest on the potential winners of a world war.

Munich was received joyfully by those who believed in peace at any price. Peace can always be had by paying the price. The practical question was: which was the sounder course? To embark upon a war for which we were not prepared or to gain time until we were? What would you have done?

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**HE FIRST CLEAR RESULT of Munich is this—that from now on diplomatic relations with the authoritarian states can only be conducted upon the basis of armed strength, and peace can only be had on that basis.

Into this state of world affairs enter the imponderables. Can Germany, Italy and Japan continue to hold their population in subjection upon a war basis in times of peace? Can the civil population of these countries indefinitely order their private lives upon a war tempo? Can these powers maintain themselves financially

and industrially until the promised rewards emerge? Is there in these countries an opposition capable of ousting the present administration through revolution by peaceful change and ultimately governing these countries upon a democratic basis?

Russia is the great enigma. She claims to have a powerful air force, a standing army of 1,400,000 men and 10,000,000 reservists. It may be gravely doubted whether her industrial and transportation development begins to answer the calls which such a military force entails. In fact it may be asserted that Russian industry certainly cannot equip, clothe and feed such a force and that her transportation system, which does not function efficiently in peace, would not function at all in war.

Throughout recorded history armies have been officered (except occasional peasant uprisings) by men of birth or breeding or education (the odd military genius excepted). The Russian army is not so officered. In addition the frequent purges amongst senior officers suggests disloyalty and untrustworthiness of such a character as to be fatal to efficiency.

The form of government prevailing in Russia does not greatly differ from that existing in Germany. At first glance one might say that they could get together quite easily and if they did they could rule the world, but the fact is that Germany intends to expand Eastward at the expense of Russia. Germany and Russia are, in the nature of things, deadly enemies. Some day we may be glad to swallow our capitalistic pride (if any) and join hands with the Russians for what they are worth to beat the Germans.

The great question facing the democracies today is this: Can they compete with the authoritarian powers in preparing for war without giving up a large measure of those liberties which are the outstanding feature of life in the democracies? For instance, Great Britain is coaxing men to join the army, air force and passive defences of that country on a voluntary basis and is still short of men on all counts. In Italy or Germany a ten word order from Hitler or Mussolini meets the situation. Similarly in industry in Great Britain, labor and capital is free. In Germany and Italy they are regimented and controlled. The output of warlike equipment will probably determine the issue in the next war. With the life of the nation at stake there should be no hesitation in the fullest use of compulsion if voluntary effort fails.

I recollect to have read somewhere, either in one of our training manuals or in a service paper, of the importance in future wars of having a favorable world opinion. The last war taught us that. In addition the last war taught us that public opinion in democracies must be carefully cultivated and deferred to; also it must be informed and educated so as to ensure unity of thought and action and capacity for sacrifice and service when the testing time comes. We are witnessing today in Great Britain and the

United States that process of mental preparation. Slowly but surely the public mind moves from point to point. It is now realized that Germany, Italy and Japan have (in disregard of the Kellogg Pact) adopted war as an instrument of policy. It is realized that these powers are not to be bound by any treaty or agreement which is inconvenient or disadvantageous to them. It is realized that ultimately they can only gain their ends at the expense of Russia, Holland, Belgium, the British Commonwealth, France and the United States. Finally it is realized that the powers immediately above named must fight not for profit or aggrandizement but for their existence.

For this process of education we are indebted to Prime Minister Chamberlain and President Roosevelt. To these two men we are further indebted for another big idea so necessary to democratic thinking, viz.: that the democracies will exhaust every conceivable machine for the maintenance of peace and will only resort to war when no other possible or conceivable course is open to them.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE QUESTION NOW ARISES—is a great world conflict inevitable? This question I cannot answer, but what is clear to me is that if there is no war, for the future and for many years to come the relationship between nations will rest upon armed strength and the checks and balances found therein.

The fate of China, Ethiopia, Austria and Czecho-Slovakia awaits the weak countries who stand in the way of the authoritarian powers. Only in powerful alliances will safety be found; only in armed strength can the democratic powers save themselves and the weak states who cleave to them.

In this condition of world affairs the policy of Canada ought to be crystal clear. We should accept the conception of a United Commonwealth without reservation. We should scorn proposals for a limited liability. We should make a contribution of men, money and material consistent with our population, wealth and resources. We should aim to make the Commonwealth so strong and so united that no enemy will dare to attack. In this way and in no other way will we find for our country, and for those who come after us, that security essential to our survival, our growth and development as a free, democratic state.

## **The Royal Military College of Canada**

**T**HE Royal Military College of Canada is the only National Educational Institution in the Dominion and is specially designed to furnish the Gentlemen Cadets with a broad scientific and academic education which will provide the foundation for their success in either civil or military life. Commissions in the British Army, Royal Air Force, Indian Army, Canadian Permanent Force and Royal Canadian Air Force are offered annually to Graduates. A limited number of Naval Cadetships are available to Gentlemen Cadets who successfully complete the first two years at the Royal Military College, and who desire to obtain commissions in the Royal Canadian Navy.

A Diploma of Graduation from the Royal Military College is accepted by the principal Universities of Canada as equivalent, subject for subject, to those covered in the first three years of the university course. The length of the course is four years, in four terms of about ten months each, and the total cost of the course, including accommodation, board, uniform, instructional materials, etc., is about \$1,500. Candidates must have attained the age of 16 years and not have attained the age of 19 years on the 1st January of the year in which they desire to enter the College. The entrance qualifications are Junior matriculation in Arts or Science or a pass standard in any of the equivalent examinations conducted by the Provincial Departments of Education. Vacancies are allotted, according to population, to the respective Provinces, and are filled in order of merit obtained by candidates in the examinations above mentioned.

Applications, accompanied by certified abstract from Birth Register, in duplicate, and two certificates of good moral character, signed by the clergyman of the place of worship the candidate usually attends, and the head of the school or college at which he has received his education for at least two preceding years, should be submitted before the 31st May to—

**THE SECRETARY  
DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE  
OTTAWA, ONTARIO**

**by whom full particulars will be furnished.**

## The Effect of Mechanization on the Role of Cavalry

*By Major G. R. Bradbrooke, M.C.*

---

I Was in England last summer, and I was attached to a cavalry regiment for a short time, and I thought if you would allow me, I would divide what I have to say into three parts. I think I should start off by telling you what I actually saw, in case that might interest you, and then I thought I would go on with what I thought, in the hope that might possibly interest you, and, if I will not be waking you up too prematurely, I thought I would end up with a few predictions or prophecies as to the future of cavalry.

I want to say at the outset, that I do not propose to enter into any long controversy as to vehicles versus horses. Suffice it to say that all the cavalry regiments in the British army in England, with the exception of the Household Cavalry, and I think three other regiments, have been mechanized. That is a fact, and what I really proposed to do there was to investigate how they used these mechanized units.

The unit I was actually attached to was the Fourth Queen's Own Hussars, and they are a cavalry light-tank regiment. It was interesting to note that none of the officers that I met were wedded to the horse as a means of transportation. The senior officers, who had spent most of their lives hunting, etc., were all quite keen on their new mode of transportation, and they were out to do their job as cavalymen, no matter what the War Office gave them to ride in. The junior officers seemed to be taking very kindly to mechanization, and the rank and file are in favour of it. The reason, I presume, is that a motor vehicle does not require attention, usually at those awkward hours when the rank and file are so exhausted that the attention they have to pay to their horses is most unwelcome. Again, I was reasoning it out that no wonder some of the officers may still have tender feelings towards their horses that they lost. They are not the people who have to hang on to these horses while they shake their heads and scatter saliva and get one's clothes all over wet grass. It is the rank and file who have to do that—the officer is away reading his map. I presume that is the reason why some officers should have qualms, but I did not meet any of the rank and file who had any qualms at all. They have a better opportunity to get employment in civil life now, because the motor car is used more than the horse.

\* \* \* \* \*



**T**O COME BACK to the cavalry light tank regiment. It consists of Headquarters Squadron and three Squadrons. In each Squadron there are three troops, and in each troop there are five light tanks and two tracked carriers; the latter carrying a section, not only as relief for the tanks' crews, but as a section which is capable of dismounted action, because it is armed with a light automatic Bren gun, and with an anti-tank rifle.

I noticed that one of the things they were studying in the manoeuvres, and had to report on, was whether that was a suitable organization for the troop. It appears they were going to try to find out, and ascertain if each troop should not consist all of the same thing—whether the mixture was good or bad. I formed a few conclusions of my own, which I will give you later.

Now, it takes about sixty light tanks to equip a cavalry light tank regiment, because, in addition to those in the troops, there are a few in headquarters. They are not producing tanks quickly enough to equip any of cavalry light tank regiments fully, so most of them are improvised with 15 cwt. trucks. Recruiting is poor, so it was interesting to note that the training condition and training strength of a cavalry regiment in England was much the same as a P. F. unit in Canada.

The Fourth Hussars only had their horses withdrawn a very few months before I got there, so their training consisted of driving and maintenance, doing the best they could with the vehicles available. They have built up a very excellent mechanical training school. There they had sectioned motor engines, and all sorts of equipment, which is an excellent means of instruction, and was an example of what can be done by men of a regiment which had only a very short time previously no mechanical experience whatever. An interesting example of the way the men were buckling to it, was a Sergeant-Major of the Fourth Hussars. He had done a great deal to build up this mechanical training school, and had just come home from a course at the Tank Corps School, previous to which he was the Rough Riding Sergeant-Major. Ordinary maintenance is carried

Athletic Goods  
Sports Supplies  
Recreation Equipment

**MOTOR CAR SUPPLY CO.**  
OF CANADA

317 Sixth Avenue West

Office Supplies  
Christmas Cards  
Wedding Stationery  
Illuminated Addresses

**The Engraving Co.**

3 - 308 8th Avenue West  
Telephone M 5743

out in much the same way as stables were previously done in cavalry regiments.

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**ACTICAL exercises were carried out while I was there, either regimental, squadron or troop, two or three times a week, and, of course, a lot of training is carried out, map reading, especially for despatch riders, and signalling.

The two main points which were laid down for tactical study for last year were "communications and control by wireless", and the "suitability of the organization to carry out the cavalry role".

The communication is an interesting thing. Wireless is supplied down to troop headquarters. It is quite obvious that, in a tank, you cannot have one wireless set dealing with too many people and on too many wave lengths. Consequently, I found that the wireless set in the squadron leader's tank communicated with the troop leaders' tanks, and, to get communication back to regimental headquarters, another set was in the second-in-command's tank. The same applies to regimental headquarters tanks. Difficulty arose usually if either the Colonel or second-in-command had to leave headquarters for any duty, because he would take with him in his tank a very vital means of communication. They got over that by the regimental sergeant major having a private tank; so we will say the second-in-command wants to go off, he borrows the sergeant-major's tank, who occupies the 2 I. C.'s tank until he returns. There is in each headquarters, a small tracked reconnaissance vehicle, but, of course, that does not hold many, and it has no armoured protection.

The only other method of control, other than by wireless, is by motorcycle despatch riders. I found all mechanized units were always short of despatch riders. The training of them is fairly complicated. In a country like England, where the roads are winding, landmarks are obscured, and, as it is impossible to ride a motorcycle and read a map at the same time, the despatch riders have to be trained to read their maps very carefully, and then ride straight to their destination without stopping. I found that I could even get lost myself by driving a motor car and trying to read a map at the same time. I would get into a village—the sign posts would lead you there—but, having arrived at a village, the next difficulty is finding one's way out.

\* \* \* \* \*

**A**FTER attending a regimental exercise, which dealt with problems connected with the withdrawal, the colonel asked me if I would make up a scheme for the Fourth Hussars and the Queens Bays, which were in barracks next door. I was rather glad of the opportunity, because there were several things I wanted to find out, so I made up the scheme to try to satisfy myself whether this organization would work or not.

---

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

Roughly speaking, I gave the Bays the job of holding the line of a river on about seven miles frontage, and the Fourth Hussars had the job of probing this line to find the flank. This exercise was carried out with a fair amount of success, although the last part of it broke down, because the wireless refused to work. This I found happened only too often where the wireless is the only means of communication between tanks.

However, as a result of that exercise, it did give me cause to think a bit about this organization, but I am going to drop that for a moment, and I will include it in the second half of my lecture.

An interesting thing about this exercise was the umpiring. I made up the exercises with the definite object of finding out how light tank regiments could hold a position, and I also wanted to find out how a light tank regiment could reconnoitre an enemy position. In the middle of the exercise, the whole country-side became littered with generals and other spectators. They put me off considerably because they were all out to find out how the thing was being umpired, and the lessons I was trying to derive from it became obscured in the haze of red and brass hats. However, I had a talk with a major-general, who apparently was going to be the chief of all the umpires at the manoeuvres; he wanted to know how to umpire mechanized formations, and he did me the honor of consulting me. On another occasion when I went on an "I" tank exercise, I formed the opinion that the only way to umpire mechanized tactical manoeuvres is by area umpires, mounted on horses, because tanks move around so quickly, it is very difficult to handle them, and tell them if they are knocked out by anti-tank weapons. I really felt that the area umpire should place himself in the area of fire of an anti-tank gun, or post, and when the tanks arrive, all he had to do was to ride out and tell them his decision.

The difficulty always will be to get the horse into the probable battle area at the right time, but I saw no other way of really accurately umpiring where mechanized formations are employed.

I saw a lot of other things, which need not be entered into this evening. Among them a demonstration put on by some mechanized cavalry for Prince Chichibu, the Emperor of Japan's brother. Although the tactical end of it is not the primary consideration on an occasion of that sort, it was very interesting.

\* \* \* \* \*

I ATTENDED an "I" tank exercise, purely from a personal interest, and, if I may digress a few minutes, I think I had better tell you something about the "I" tanks for fear any remarks I may make about cavalry tanks may be mixed up with "I" tanks. "I" tanks are purely infantry tanks, and they have been brought in to do the job which the tanks did in the last war, on the 15th of September, and from then on. After the war, as you know, tanks got speedy.

---

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

and very mobile, and they finally developed into an army that was prepared to win any war by itself but was not prepared to waste time with infantry. The result was they never were around when the infantry wanted them, and it was found there would still be infantry in wars. The "I" tank has been revived to do the purely infantry job, and is not to be confused at all with the cavalry tank which I hope to show you still carries out the cavalry role.

I visited the Mechanized Experimental Establishment, and saw several cavalry vehicles, and I incidentally saw the "I" tank which I have just mentioned. There is only one of them in existence. She was in the corner, and she had her tracks off, and was referred to as "Matilda".

I made many inquiries about these "I" tanks, because I was very interested in making a comparison between it and the cavalry tank. Incidentally, these "I" tanks only go about five miles an hour, when co-operating with infantry. They are very heavily armoured, about five or six inches of armour plate, and it is nothing more or less than a forward machine gun.

I find that the possibility of wheels is by no means exhausted. I rode in one vehicle which had a four-wheel drive. It was a Czecho-Slovakian vehicle, and it had a very high clearance, but in the middle of the running board, they had two spare wheels running free on bracket axles, so that if this machine ever got bellied in loose ground, the spare wheels would help it over. I rode in it, and its performance over very rough ground was quite extraordinary.

They had another vehicle there, which had not only four-wheel drive, with an engine at both ends, but it also had fore and hind steering, which enabled it to turn round almost within its own length. I did not ride in it, but I was told that its performance was much the same as the Czecho-Slovakian machine. I should imagine it would be pretty difficult to train men to handle the two engines.

It appears that with this mechanized establishment they are developing a standard track chassis. This chassis is supposed to take not only a light tank, but to take a cavalry reconnaissance vehicle, a machine gun carrier, a mortar carrier, and incidentally, it is powered with a Ford V-8 engine. I saw several of these chassis with two or three different kinds of bodies on them, and the cavalry reconnaissance vehicle mounted on this chassis, but I was not very much impressed with it. I believe it was too heavy and too expensive, and had not the characteristics I thought were necessary.

\* \* \* \* \*

I NOW come to some thoughts I had as a review of all the things I saw. I started to think, what is the role of cavalry? We often hear that the role of cavalry is reconnaissance or protecting flanks or something like that—they are merely duties arising out of the role, and not the role at all. As I had never heard anyone lay down

a definition I had to invent one, so I start off with the following definition of the cavalry role. The role of cavalry is to provide information, protection, and other assistance to the remainder of a force, by the use of mobility superior to the main body of that force.

I thought over the fact that modern conditions of war visualize, of course, the ever increasing use of mechanized troops, and it is because cavalry lacked the speed, the wide range of action and striking power which is necessary to carry out their role, that they have been taken off their horses and put into mechanized vehicles. Although their means of locomotion have changed, the role has not changed. Here are the duties of cavalry when carrying out their role:

1. Reconnaissance for Information.
2. Reconnaissance for Protection.
3. Distant action, including raids.
4. Participation in the battle; that is to say, seizing the tactical features by shock or dismounted action if held by the enemy.
5. Holding and denying to the enemy tactical features.
6. Rapid intervention by shock or dismounted action, in the main battle at a critical moment.
7. Pursuit.
8. Withdrawal.
9. Action as a mobile reserve prepared to carry out any of the above at short notice.

Divisional cavalry have exactly the same role as the cavalry of the mobile division or army cavalry. Except that their duties are slightly more restricted, their role is exactly the same. In the case of a cavalry regiment, or squadron, the handling of cavalry has changed very little in carrying out any of these tasks which I have enumerated.

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**HE tactical handling of the troop I consider has changed because it is equipped differently, and I feel that we can examine the action of the troop, that is the sub-unit to which all cavalry action boils down to sooner or later.

I told you that a troop consists of five light tanks and two tracked carriers, and it has a wireless control back to Headquarters only. Now then, how can that troop carry out its work? Can that troop attack, defend and reconnoitre? Because these are the three operations of war today to which all tactical action is reduced sooner or later.

Let us take, first, what I saw and found about this troop in attack. I found that the five light tanks of a troop can attack; that is shock action of cavalry. But they require fire support by artillery. The two tracked carriers carry out dismounted attack. They also need fire support, but the co-operation between the two elements in attack seems to be too difficult for a troop leader to handle. Granted

the carriers can give small arms fire support to the attack of the five tanks, but that support must of necessity be from a widely separated angle from the tank attack.

I do not see how a troop leader can, within his limited sphere, co-ordinate the two different elements. A simultaneous attack by both tanks and carriers dismounted, seems to be also out of the question owing to the vast difference in the rate of movement. The only form of co-operation that I can see is that the tanks attack and the carrier sections rush up and hold the position.

I concluded, on the whole, that the organization was not suitable for the troop in attack. I thought that, to get the best results, the troop should consist wholly of tanks or wholly of carriers, and the co-operation between the two, should be the task of the squadron leader or regimental commander.

\* \* \* \* \*

I WILL now deal with the troop in defence. While tanks are quite unsuitable for direct defence, they can be put in a position in an emergency to use their machine guns for defence. This is a very uneconomical role because it is a waste of their characteristics; that is, the ability to move, also to fight, and be protected by armour while they do so. Their main form of usefulness in defence is to be held in reserve for counter attack. The highest forms of usefulness of carrier sections is defence. Each of these carriers can provide a section post, and provide small arms fire with their Bren machine gun and rifles, and anti-tank fire with their Boys anti-tank rifle, but there are only two carrier sections to provide second posts, with the five light tanks in reserve.

I, therefore, thought that again the troop was not suitably organized for defence. I still think that a troop should consist of wholly light tanks, or wholly carriers so that the latter can put up an organized defence with some prospect of success.

I come on to examine this troop in reconnaissance. While reconnaissance, of course, is carried out by patrols, the troop is supplier of patrols. Now, patrols can be made up of anything you have in your troop, of course, but what you need is personnel to reconnoitre, personnel to fight either for the information or for their own protection, and personnel to carry back the information. How are you going to do this with five light tanks and two track carriers? You can have the patrol consist entirely of tanks or track carriers, but I found the best method was to have your patrol consist of two light tanks and one carrier. In that way the troop could supply two patrols, the troop leader's tank remaining behind with despatch riders to control the action of his two patrols, get their information and transmit it back to the squadron. In deciding on the suitability of this arrangement to patrol for information, I took the example of a patrol moving up to a bridgehead to discover if it was occupied by the enemy or not, and if so, with what?

---

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

This patrol consists of two light tanks and a tracked carrier. The only way to make the enemy disclose that he is there is to make him open fire, so one or both of the light tanks are sent forward to discover the enemy and the tracked carrier follows at a respectful distance in the rear. The patrol leader may either be in the leading rank or the second rank, and there are two ways he can move—either move closed down, looking through slits in the tank, or he can reconnoitre opened up, with his head and shoulders sticking out of the tank, and really look around. The patrol move on up to the bridgehead, and the first intimation that they will get that the enemy is at the bridgehead, is by fairly short range fire from the enemy at that bridgehead, probably anti-tank rifles and machine guns. Then the leading tank opens fire, and the men in the tracked carrier, seeing what is going on ahead, have to dismount and move around and get the information by stealth—you try to see without being seen.

Then, having got this information, one of the tanks has to go back with it to troop headquarters, and as there are no motorcycles to do the work at present. The situation now is that the patrol has accomplished its mission—it has found out that there are enemy holding this bridgehead, and that the enemy have anti-tank guns. But one tank must invariably be lost, and it raises the question in my mind whether the information gained is worth the money lost, as a light tank costs \$40,000. I can hardly see that, in any of the occasions when the patrol found out what was wanted but lost a tank, where I was getting my money's worth.

I, therefore, came to the conclusion that the organization of the troop was not an economical method of carrying out reconnaissance.

\* \* \* \* \*

THESE were divisional cavalry regiments carrying out the work I have just described. I went and investigated the mobile division, and I found that it consisted of the tank brigade—heavy cavalry—and two brigades of light tank cavalry. I began to wonder whether

**NASH-LAFAYETTE  
MOTOR CARS**

**ALBERTA NASH LIMITED**  
Distributors

4th STREET WEST and 7th AVENUE, CALGARY

---

THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

they could perform such duties which we have always visualized the mobile or cavalry division carrying out in the past. For instance, protective reconnaissance on a wide front to screen the movement of a main army and prevent the enemy coming in on the flank or the rear, or carry out pursuit on a wide enough front and of sufficient depth to secure victory in the end.

I felt that this tank brigade, which is very expensive, must be kept concentrated for shock action—they are the heavy cavalry, the tank brigade. That tank commander will find himself very much in the same position as Lord Jellicoe, who was said to be the only man who could lose the war in ten minutes, because the Grand Fleet cost so much money that if he did anything wrong the whole system was likely to collapse. To a lesser degree this tank brigade when fully equipped is going to be an expensive thing, and if lost, I think the British public are going to feel just as badly about it as they feel about the loss of a number of expensive battleships.

The job of the two mechanized cavalry brigades is to move in front of and protect this heavy cavalry brigade, but if they are dispersed on a wide front, which I have just suggested is so necessary, they are going to be away from this heavy tank brigade, possibly when they are needed the most, and when there is an opportunity of really using it for shock action.

It seemed to me that the organization of light tanks was unsuitable for the protection of heavy cavalry brigades in the mobile division, and I also thought that the light tanks were unsuitable for divisional cavalry.

\* \* \* \* \*

AS I said before, I went to this mechanized experimental establishment, and I looked over the vehicles they were thinking of using. They were not quite satisfied with the light tank as a cavalry reconnaissance vehicle, and they had a cavalry reconnaissance vehicle there on a standard chassis with a Ford V-8 engine. It was fairly large, had no top to it, and it looked not unlike a large

|                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| <b>DENTIST</b>          |         |
| <b>DR. J. M. WARREN</b> |         |
| 236 8th Avenue West     |         |
| CALGARY                 |         |
| X-Ray                   | Over    |
| M 3447                  | Kresges |

|                                |                |
|--------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>S. C. W. MORRIS</b>         |                |
| M.D., C.M.                     |                |
| ALL FORMS OF ELECTRICAL        |                |
| TREATMENT                      |                |
| DISEASES OF THE SKIN AND SCALP |                |
| 602 Southam Building           |                |
| M 7006                         | Calgary W 3696 |



Carden Loyd. Although it had both the Bren gun and a Boys anti-tank rifle mounted on it, which they could not fire simultaneously, neither of them had all round traverse. In my opinion that is a very serious matter, because when that reconnnaisance vehicle encounters the enemy, as by the very nature of its duties it must do sooner or later, its ability to return fire immediately, while it is turning round and getting out, is absolutely essential in my opinion.

I was not impressed with the vehicle because I thought there was a lot of armour on it. It was heavy and seemed unwieldy. I did not see it in motion but it looked expensive. That is the main thing I felt that we are all obliged to consider.

We see in the paper vast sums of money being paid for the British Army, but if they have a great many of these heavily armoured vehicles, I do not think even this money will go very far.

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**O summarize my observations. I found that the light tank troop possesses considerable hitting power with the light tanks in shock action, but the carrier section could not participate in the same action except by fire. I felt that the troop leader could not handle a troop composed of these two elements. I felt the same in defence. Because of only being able to supply two defensive posts, I felt the troop could not really carry out a job on a very wide front, and it would be better if the troop consisted of one instead of two elements. I also found that the light tank troop could only supply two patrols, and therefore the old power of dispersion that once was possessed by cavalry has really disappeared. We cannot disperse to get information and concentrate so readily to fight, the way we could with horses.

I also found that the light tank is too blind to cary out detailed reconnaissance, and it is too expensive to risk its inevitable loss when attempting to do so. Armour causes expense, weight, and lack of mobility and restricted vision, and an anti-tank gun can always defeat armour. Armour always defats mobility. Having summarized the conclusions that I reached, I now will venture to make a very few prophecies, and which you can question if you like.

\* \* \* \* \*

**F**IRST of all, I reported that in any action that I had seen these mechanized cavalry regiments carry out, thought they were over-tanked and under-carried for any role which I had seen them have to perform. I then felt that some sort of cheap, fast vehicle was required and that in order to keep it cheap we should do away with armour altogether. It can be tracked if you like because it does give its ability to turn almost within its own length, but I saw that the possibilities of wheels are not exhausted, and I am rather inclined to a cheap, fast, four-wheeled vehicle, with a machine gun

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

mounted on it so that there is an all-round traverse. Such a vehicle can move up to the hypothetical bridgehead. It will come under fire, it can return fire and attempt to back out while it is returning the fire. The small crew in it can dismount and get information. Even if the vehicle is lost you have only lost about \$2,000 instead of \$40,000, so I predict that some cheap fast vehicle, either tracked or wheeled, will be produced for the cavalry, mounted with a gun with an all-round traverse.

It may be armoured slightly, but as soon as one starts to put armour on then the expense and lack of mobility goes up one hundred per cent.

I feel also that the mobile division will not exist very long in its present form. I still think that they will keep the tank brigade as heavy cavalry and they may have enough light cavalry units to give it protection for reconnaissance over the ground over which it can operate, so that it won't disperse itself on some fruitless task. But I think we will have to go back to light cavalry, and they will be mounted in a very much lighter vehicle, possibly one I visualized, in order to cover wide fronts, and swarm the countryside; recapture some of the power of dispersement which has at present been lost.

I did see some small memorandum that the Brigadier brought home from England and I rather gather from that memorandum that they have changed the organization which I saw. They have come to the conclusion that these regiments are over-tanked and under-carried, and I rather gathered that they are concentrating all the carriers in one squadron and all the tanks in others. However, that has yet to be seen whether my prediction comes true or not.

To conclude, I gave as the title of this lecture, "The Effect of Mechanization on the role of Cavalry". That is not a very good title because mechanization has had no effect on the role of cavalry at all. The role still remains, but the means of locomotion whilst carrying out that role has altered and some of the duties within that role are carried out slightly different.

\* \* \* \* \*

Brigadier Pearkes: I really have not thought out any very definite remarks to make regarding this address we have heard today.

The whole question of the employment of mechanized cavalry is being given very careful consideration in Great Britain. I happen to have seen this same regiment at work later on in the year when they were on the additional manoeuvres in Hartfordshire. I saw them trying to solve some of these same problems.

I did not agree altogether with some of Major Bradbrooke's contentions, and yet I heartily agree with some of the others. I

think it has been decided now to take the brigade out of the mobile division, and to use the mobile division more as a reconnoitering or covering force, and with the tank brigade, which Major Bradbrooke compared to the Grand Fleet, to be held as a reserve in the hands of the army commander.

Regarding the implement of the divisional cavalry with these mechanized troops, I am not prepared to say yet that the mechanized troop has proved a failure. You carry out reconnaissance on a wide front. That front is limited possibly to the front that a couple of patrols can carry out—possibly a front of five miles. These patrols are working on roads. There is some inter-communication between these patrols there by vehicles coming back, or by lighter vehicles, such as motorcycles keeping in touch with the patrols, and you have in the hands of a troop commander the carriers which can be rushed up pretty quickly to a flank, so that they can be employed to work around and do exactly the same sort of task as perhaps a reserve section of a horse troop would do and get around.

I am not certain if you put all your carriers into a squadron that you would not slow operations up a great deal, and if you had to wait to bring up your carrier squadron, as soon as you bump into a little bit of opposition, that you might not slow the process up very considerably. However, it is very hard to visualize in England the type of country in which you might expect this mechanized cavalry to be working over. In England you are in enclosed country, restricted by the conditions of the fields to movements on roads, and everywhere in your manoeuvre area certain fields and parks were out of bounds. You had these frequent villages through which you had to crawl. Movement by night was extraordinarily slow. If you could get seven miles per hour out of mechanized cavalry by night, you were doing pretty well. If you were operating in Lybia, or on the western desert of Egypt, conditions might be different out there, and I am not prepared to admit that the enemy is going to have all these efficient anti-tank guns and rifles, and I think there is a chance there where your mechanized cavalry might get through.

I have not taken the opportunity to give any really considered remarks upon this. I would like you to think what we might do in this country. We have not got those expensive mechanized vehicles—we are not likely to have—but I think we could make great use certain seasons of the year, and in certain parts of the country of these light reconnoitering cars which Major Bradbrooke has suggested. I think they will get you a lot of information. Then again I feel that we cannot go the whole hog for mechanizing our cavalry here. I am convinced, as far as this part of the country is concerned, particularly to the westward, we require our horse cavalry. I think the mobility of horse cavalry will be enhanced considerably by a certain number of reconnoitring cars, to be able to save horse flesh tremendously, and will be able to get you the information.

I would be dead against mechanizing the whole of our cavalry in Canada, as long as we consider that cavalry, as we must, being used for the defence of Canada here. I believe that it is valuable training for us to go on, even if we stick purely to cavalry of the horse type. We can get our men trained along lines which would help them, should they ever find they are being employed as mechanized cavalry, but I do not see where the cavalry of Canada is going to fit into a mechanized cavalry scheme—that is a scheme of things for the defence of the Empire, as far as mechanized cavalry. I am all for keeping our horses, and working with our horses these light vehicles which Major Bradbrooke was speaking about.



## **Members of the Militia**

Are assured a Cordial Welcome at the

**“PALACE”**

**CALGARY'S FAMILY THEATRE**

Where the LATEST and MOST UP-TO-DATE in  
MOVING PICTURES are ALWAYS FEATURED.

P. D. EGAN, Manager

## A Private in the Guards

*By Rev. Dudley F. Kemp*

“**A** PRIVATE IN THE GUARDS” There is a book of that name, now quite forgotten I suppose by everybody—even those who read it—written by Stephen Graham, who, during the war was in the Scots Guards. I hope I am able to leave you a different impression from the one that book created, because Stephen Graham was a sensitive artist who joined up at the beginning of the war, and became a very bitter man from the treatment he received in the Scots’ Guards.

One must understand, as you gentlemen will readily agree, that everybody does not fit into the scheme of things, and a good many men did not fit into the scheme of things in the Brigade. The idea that I hope to leave with you tonight is that the Brigade of Guards proves the virtue of discipline, and also proves that practice makes perfect. (I feel rather like an N.C.O. giving a lecture at Camberley Senior Officers’ School. I am sure you will bear with me while I give you a few impressions from the other side of the fence. I do not think there is really anything of very great interest for me to say to you tonight—it is all culled from one’s memories, and those memories are now twenty years old, and they are getting pretty faded even in my own mind).

\* \* \* \* \*

**I** DIVIDED this lecture up into three sections. First of all; the Guards in peace time. Second: the war situation in 1914, because there was a situation created in the Brigade of Guards then; and last, the personal narrative.

The three senior regiments date back to the time of the Stuarts. The first, or Grenadier Regiment of Foot Guards, and the Coldstream Guards, and the Scots Fusilier Guards. They are old in terms of military history, and, in these three senior regiments in peace time, there were three battalions of Grenadiers, three of Coldstreams, and one of Scots. When the Boer war broke out, Queen Victoria ordered that there be a regiment of Irish Guards formed. This was duly done, and, when the Great War broke out the King ordered that the Welsh Guards be formed, so that made a complete picture of five regiments of Guards.

As some of you know, each Regiment of Guards has a different arrangement of buttons on the tunic, and they wore different plumes on their bearskins. The Grenadiers wore a white plume on the left hand side. The Coldstreams wore a red plume on the right hand side. The Scots Guards wore no plume at all, and the Irish Guards wore a green plume on the right, and the Welsh Guards green and white on the right.

---

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

Now, the duties of the Brigade of Guards were to guard the King's person in times of peace and war, and be available for foreign service in times of national emergency. That idea really was born in the old days of the Duke of Cambridge, when the War Office was in a worse condition than it has ever been before or since. The Duke of Cambridge was very proud of the Brigade of Guards, and he was opposed to their leaving England. King Edward VII. was also very partial to the Guards being at home as well, and it might have been that the Guards would not have seen a great deal of foreign service, except for the fact that the national emergencies came frequently.

We find on the colors of the Brigade of Guards plenty of battle honors, and not like the poor old Bedford Regiment, who were called the "Peacemakers" before the Great War. The Guards certainly had plenty of battle honors. The regimental duties however caused the Brigade of Guards to miss one priceless thing, and that was the value of foreign peacetime service. They never served abroad in peace time. I say the missing of a valuable experience, because I think it is generally accepted today that the best two divisions who went over in 1914, or at least at the beginning of the war, were the Seventh and Twenty-ninth, both of which I believe were formed completely from regiments that with one exception, had been serving in various parts of the world when the war broke out. Since the Great War, that foreign service in peace clause has been removed, and we have seen the regiments in various parts of the world.

Several battalions went to China in 1924, and there has always been a regiment of the Guards in Egypt since the war. That is just a little background about the Brigade itself.

\* \* \* \* \*

**N**EXT we come to the war situation, and there was a very serious situation created when the war broke out and Kitchener took over the War Office. The Guards became somewhat of a problem, because it was known at once that every available man in the regular army would be needed, and a great many more besides. Nevertheless, some battalions of the Brigade of necessity had to stay behind, and finally a decision was reached, whereby in my own regiment, the first Battalion went over with the second division, and the second Battalion went over with the seventh Division, and the third Battalion, much to their chagrin, was forced to stay at home in England until 1915.

The second problem that the war created was this in a question: How were the Guards to be affected by the New Army policy which came into force; the policy of raising enormous numbers of men and forming entirely new battalions? You will remember that the Rifle Brigade, the Royal Fusiliers, and other regiments with famous names had, by the end of the war, some forty

battalions each in the field, causing thereby I think, a certain amount of esprit de corps to be lost, and regimental tradition naturally suffered. It was impossible even in so fine a regiment as the Rifle Brigade to keep up the regimental traditions that existed before the war. It has been said that it is as difficult to get a commission in the Rifle Brigade in peace time as it is in the Brigade of Guards, and therefore, when forty battalions are formed with hundreds of new men, and dozens of new officers, there is bound to be a certain amount of lost prestige and that question had to be faced in the Brigade of Guards.

The War Office decided that each of the senior regiments should be increased by one battalion only. Where there were three Grenadier and Coldstream, there would now be four. The Scots Guards were also allowed one extra reserve battalion. The Welsh Guards had been formed with one battalion. Another decision had been reached, which I think had a great bearing during the years of the war; that no man should go overseas without having received first nine months training at home of the most intensive nature. Now that, perhaps, does not seem tremendously important, unless you have read the other side of the story. You have read Graves "Goodbye to all That", how he, as an officer of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers, tells the story of men arriving, not to his own regiment, but to the Second Welsh Regiment, which was a regular peace time battalion. Recruits were sent to France in 1914 with three weeks' training—men who had never once fired a rifle during those three weeks. Such a course naturally invited disaster, and disaster was, in some cases, the result. So the War Office decided to keep the Guards as much as possible on a peace time footing, which I say had a very great bearing on the conduct of these regiments in the war.

Early in 1916, another new step was taken when the Guards Division was formed. Previously, battalions of the Guards had been mixed up with line regiments to form Guards Brigades. There was one exception to that rule: the Fourth Guards Brigade and my own battalion was part of that brigade which consisted of all Guards: the second Grenadiers, the second and third Coldstreams, and the first Irish. I do not think there was a better brigade in France in 1914. I think Field Marshal French said in his opinion it was the best brigade in the whole of the old army.

The new Guards Division, formed in 1916, first saw action on the first of July of that year, and fought together as a division until the end of the war. Why they were formed into a Guards Division I do not know. When you start talking to men about their army experience, they always tell you that their particular battalion was used as shock troops, and the term has become perfectly stupid, because to my knowledge, the British Army did not indulge in that particular form of enterprise. I never heard of any troops officially being called shock troops, and I do not think the

Guards Division was formed to be shock troops. I think the idea was to keep up the esprit de corps among the regiments, and at the same time for them to take their ordinary duty in the line as did the other divisions in whatever army they may have been in.

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**HAT is a very brief summary of the war conditions, and I want to wrap up, if I am able to, the remainder of my narrative as a personal narrative, which may or not be interesting, as the case may be.

Perhaps you may wonder how I got into such august company as the Brigade of Guards. It began one hot summer's day, when I was at school in England and was playing in the first eleven against an army team. I espied a very resplendent figure—a boy who had been in the sixth form a couple of terms before, and who had become a second lieutenant in the R.H.A. I think the R.H.A. had slipped a bit then, because I did not think his uniform strictly in accordance with regulations. He had on one of those terrible yellow shirts, which some officers wore if their C.O's. were pretty easy on them.

We got talking to this chap, and he of course was very bumptious about things and quite a fire-eater in his way, and another fellow and I decided that we ought to do something about it. Therefore, as the summer holidays were coming on in a few weeks time, when school finally broke up, we went surreptitiously one day to an old master of nearly sixty years ago, who, incidentally, was to be killed at the age of sixty-one with the R.G.A. We went to him and said: "Mr. Boyes, can you do anything for us—we want to join the army". Strangely enough, he quite rallied to the idea and said: "I will give you a letter to the London Scottish".

My father at the time was overseas. He had been on the Reserve of Officers, and though over age when the war broke out

For the Best Paints

— use —

**KWICKWORK RUBBER  
ENAMEL**

**NEWGLO VELVET WALL-  
FINISH**

**PILKINGTON BROS.**

(Canada) **LIMITED**

Compliments of

**CONWAYS LIMITED**

**WHOLESALE  
TOBACCOS  
CONFECTIONERY**

—

**Moir's Chocolates**



he went back to the K.O.Y.L.I.'s, and was in France. He asked me if I would wait until I was eighteen to go into the Inns of Court O.T.C., and had hoped that I might get a commission in his old regiment. My friend and I, however, were enthused about things in general, as young men of that time were, and we decided that it was much better to do something at the moment than wait until we were eighteen years old. We went to the drill hall of the London Scottish and presented ourselves to a very fiery looking sergeant-major. We said that we had a letter, and wanted to know if they would accept us in the regiment, and he told us to go back to school. Very crestfallen, we went back home, and so I wrote to the master whom we had first interviewed, and I received a most astonishing reply. He said: "I believe if you try you could get into the Guards." I had been laughed at when I went to join the London Scottish, so I did a little laughing at myself when the Guards were suggested.

So one day I got some money from home and said "I am going to town" The answer was: "What are you going for?" "Oh", I replied, "I am just going to look around." I went and presented myself at Chelsea Barracks and told the corporal of the guard, who was by the main gate, that I wanted to join the regiment, and he seemed a little bewildered. He said: "You go and talk to Company Sergeant-Major French, and he will tell you what to do". I pulled up at the door that had Company Sergeant-Major French on it. He was a one-eyed man with a terrific moustache, and he looked at me and wondered how I had ever got into the barracks, and he seemed a bit staggered by it all. He said: "I think we can do something for you," and then I was staggered. He said: "You go down to Birdcage Walk, and see the officer in charge of recruits, and if he wants you, he will tell you." I went down there, and on the way out they all shook hands with me and all that sort of thing—very humorous in the light of after events. By the end of that day, I was a recruit in the Grenadier Guards. I went home that night, and broke the news to an uncle of mine, who was living with us. I said: "Well, Dick, I have joined the Grenadier Guards" and it was his turn to be a bit staggered. He said: "I will not stop you from doing it if you want to try it, but if anything happens you can get out as you are under age." The next morning I put on an old cap. I had started off in a bowler, but I was stopped, and uncle suggested that I go in a cap. I wore an old suit of clothes and started down on the trip to Caterham Barracks where all the recruits are trained.

\* \* \* \* \*

I WAS soon to have my eyes opened in a weird and wonderful way, and, for the time being, had many vain regrets. I was put into a hut with forty of, I think, the worst roughnecks that I have ever come across, and I have met quite a few. Amongst these forty, there was one or two very strange characters. There was a cashiered captain of the K.R.R.C., who some time afterwards

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

told me his story. The K.R.R., as you military gentlemen know, is quite a regiment, but the man in question was an old Etonian. He was well educated, and had gone through Sandhurst and got a commission. Unfortunately, as has happened to more than one young officer, he got in with the bookies. Apparently these particular bookies were commission agents, and I think they have ruined more than one young officer. Unfortunately, he had played the ponies quite a lot, and I believe he had removed some regimental funds, which, unfortunately, was discovered. He came in as a private, was a good soldier, and kept his secret.

There was another young chap from Winchester and New College Oxford. What he was doing in the Guards was rather a mystery, but he confided to me some time afterwards that he felt that he had none of the qualities which were necessary in an officer. He was very quiet—very studious, and he felt he could lose himself as a private in the army, rather than accept the responsibility of being a commissioned officer, and he afterwards became a company runner in my battalion. There was also a man who had jumped his bail—quite a character.

There was also Lord Calthorpe's second footman, who was also quite a boy in his own right, and an assortment of dock laborers and all kinds of riff-raff. From then on, I began to learn how the Guards were different from other regiments.

We were taught at once that no other regiment in any army anywhere was worth its salt. I am talking seriously to you. We were taught at once that all other regiments would probably run away at the slightest sign of danger, and if it were not for the Guards, the war would have been lost in the first three weeks, and it was up to us to carry on the great tradition. It had quite an effect, as I hope to show you in a little while. Incidentally, we had no knives and forks to eat with for two weeks—I have just remembered that. Have you ever tried eating mulligatawny with your fingers?

We were given uniforms immediately. We were taken to the tailor, and every uniform was absolutely fitted to the skin—none of those frightful things you saw walking about the streets of London during the war. Everyone was fitted, and fitted properly.

For two months we were never allowed to quick march. We did not have a rifle in our hands. Everything was done by slow march, and if you can imagine five parades a day, doing nothing but slow marching all the time. However, there was "method in the madness", because we learned that all commands are given and must be given on the correct foot. Perhaps that is old stuff to you now. I suppose all commands are given on the correct foot. If they are not given on the correct foot, it results for example in a sloppy halt. During the slow march, every command was given on the correct foot. For example, when we were going to halt, the order

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

was given as the left foot was passing the right. That is the exact second the order has to be given, or the halt will not be as clean as it might be.

When I came over to Canada and went to Manitoba University, I was prevailed upon to join the O.T.C., because it was pointed out that the college had never won the shield for drilling, and it was thought that three or four old soldiers might help things along, so we went on parade one day. A very chesty fellow was the Company Sergeant-Major in the O.T.C. He had no idea about giving orders at all, and, after the parade was over, I told him how to give orders. He did not like it very much and did not want advice from anybody. I went ahead anyway, and explained one or two things to him, and it was astonishing how easy the fellows picked it up, and we won the shield.

Practice in the right way does make perfect, and I have seen regiments, in this country, where the simplest rules of command are still incorrectly given, and where the drilling is very sloppy indeed.

\* \* \* \* \*

ANOTHER thing we were taught, as soon as we went in, was a great deal of regimental and military history. The war was a far distant thing to us. There was none of this dashing around. Everything went on as if in peace time. We learned that in 1709, or some other year, Gascoigne, at the head of twenty men, carried a redoubt somewhere. Then the lecturer would state that a Mr. Gascoigne, who, of course comes from the same family, was at the present time a member of the regiment. That to me had a very pronounced psychological effect. We learned that families had sent their sons literally for hundreds of years.

At the end of three months an astonishing change had come over these forty men. I will admit that my first impression was utterly wrong. I got my first lessons then in human nature—in the

**Alberta Laundry  
Limited**  
DRY CLEANERS

Phone R 2051  
730 2nd AVENUE WEST  
Calgary, Alberta

**JENKIN'S**  
**Groceteria Limited**  
· CALGARY

Operating 38 Retail Stores  
Throughout Alberta

study of human nature. Some of these chaps were first class citizens, and I have never since taken that snobbish attitude toward my fellow men. Because a man is walking around in velveteen trousers, he is not necessarily a cad. There are some very fine men wearing velveteen trousers.

At the end of three months we were given the battalion to which we were going. That was very important. Another thing we had noticed during our training was that the young officers got just as rough treatment as we did, and they certainly put the young chaps over the jumps. Later on in the war, one or two men came from line regiments. For the price of sixpence per man, these officers were allowed to drill twenty men, in order to get some practice. On one particular occasion, one of these young chaps dashed over to the men whom he was drilling, and began to curse them, and go after them, and call them the scum of the earth. The company sergeant-major quietly called the man and said: "Mr. Jones, will you come over here?" And he said very quietly but so that we could hear: "We do not talk to men like that." It was quite a lesson. I never once during my whole career in the Brigade of Guards ever see an officer insult a man, but I saw lots of this in line regiments. The N.C.O.'s. were pretty bad, but I suppose they had to be. The warrant officers were first class men, and the officers too, by the training they had had, and by the background of their own family traditions, were men with whom it was a pleasure to serve. The regimental sergeants-major were absolutely in a class apart. There were two in particular—Wood and Capper. They were great men in any military company. I am quite sure if they had not felt that they should stay with the Guards they could quite easily have been colonels in other regiments.

\* \* \* \* \*

AFTER four months, we went to Chelsea to start our round of King's Guards. Anybody who has done the two to four a.m. guard on one of the front gates of Buckingham Palace and looked down the Mall to the Admiralty Arch during those hours sees a London he has never seen before. The interest was heightened during those days by the fact that there might be air raids, and we had a perfect view of the whole thing.

I would like to say another word about the officers. There was always, as I have tried to show, a nucleus of great names, and when I say that, I am not intending to be snobbish, but there were great names, and there had been a certain number of men coming to the regiment with those names for two hundred years. The standard declined somewhat during the war, although it remained remarkably high. We had one or two Etonian Jews, who turned out to be very fine officers. We had one or two Oxonian-nouveaux riches and also a few foreigners. Prince Imeritinsky was a very fine officer and very popular with the men, as was Mr. Brown, the American millionaire of the Brown-Shipley firm of American bankers.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

Overseas, he used to have the most marvellous hampers sent out to the men. It did not matter where the officers came from, they were very quickly moulded into the tradition. Officers and men always came up—they never sank—all through the war.

Towards the end of 1916, I left for overseas, and by that time the Guards Division had been formed, and things were pretty quiet after the Somme. We moved up to north of Ypres. My commanding officer, Col. de Crespigny, was one of those mad people who always came into the front line without a tin hat on. My company officer, a very quiet man, certainly one of God's gentlemen, Capt. Harcourt-Vernon. He stayed there for years, and seemed to go on and on, and, when the battalion marched back from Germany to Chelsea I watched them coming in with a very full heart indeed, and Harcourt-Vernon was at the head of number four company.

The discipline was very severe overseas, but the men were everything. The men were the only important people. The officers were not given the slightest consideration, from the C.O. down. "Noblesse oblige" I suppose. My own career overseas was not particularly wonderful. I was wounded on the first of July, 1917 at Pilken Ridge, before the main action began, which was rather lucky for me, and I returned to enjoy a long time in the hospital, owing to repeated trouble with a shot in my left lung. I returned to an empty barracks. There was hardly a man left. The March retreat of 1918 had practically finished the regiment. The third Coldstreams and the fourth Grenadiers disappeared. Only a handful of men and a young officer returned. Immediately, the fourth battalion had to be built up again, and the whole barracks was denuded of men and recruits were coming in very slowly.

I would like to say one word about the March retreat, although I did not have to endure it, I have read a great deal about it. The Guards Division was right there in the thick of it, one of the Fifth army. I had the very highest respect for Field Marshal Gough, but there was something wrong with the Fifth Army. I do not know whether Gough himself at the time knew there was anything wrong with that army, but the Tommies knew it, and we certainly did suffer for it.

A little later, owing to lack of numbers, the Guards began to fill up with recruits from the London regiments, but by that time, the retreat was all over and naturally the war was coming to its tardy close. These regiments were given six months training on top of what they had, and, in most cases, turned out to be very fine soldiers. By this time we come to the end of the war, but I stayed on as I did not know what else to do at the time.

\* \* \* \* \*

ONE interesting but not very pleasant interlude was strike-breaking in the east end of London when the great strike came in the summer of 1919. Somebody on one occasion hit me on the back of the neck with a tomato. I am not sure if it was a general

strike, but it was certainly a railway strike, because we were sent down to Stratford East. The whole battalion went down, as there were thousands of pounds of material on the goods vans, and we were to protect it. Somebody threw this tomato as we were going through the East end and it got me on the back of the neck, and imagine my embarrassment when this stuff began trickling down my back.

I stayed for another year until the end of 1919, and the quartermaster with whom at that time I was working suggested I might like to stay a little longer but I did not wish to. So that ended my army career.

I think that the Guards, have been perhaps misunderstood though not by fighting soldiers. I want to read to you a few lines, the impression of a man, who like Stephen Graham also writes a very bitter book indeed, but who has written it anonymously. He did not fit into the scheme of things during the war:—

It was the fashion to sneer at the Guards because of their fine discipline and excellent parade ground work. They had their faults as I was to find later. Most of their N.C.O's. would do anything, including murder, all for half a crown, or eighteen pence if you could convince them you did not have any more. They were the most corrupt lot of blighters that ever lived by petty blackmail, but they were fine soldiers, magnificently officered.

He closes the chapter by writing:—

You could sleep very peacefully in reserve, if you knew that you had the Guards behind you.

**UNDERWOODS**  
the  
***Typists' Preference***

---

**Underwood - Elliott - Fisher**  
LIMITED

307 SEVENTH AVE. WEST  
CALGARY

THE  
**E. T. MARSHALL CO.**  
WHOLESALE  
TOBACCOS  
and  
CONFECTIONERY

---

815 2nd St. East, Calgary  
Telephone M 2627

## Outpost

*By J. H. R. Thomson*

---

Palestine Front: Yesterday, all was quiet. One of our small outposts was driven in by the Turks, but the position was later retaken.

Newspaper report.

**I**T WAS three o'clock before the battery reached the rendezvous. Since early morning we had marched spasmodically, under a blistering October sun, taking the accumulated dust of three regiments of Yeomanry, ahead of us, and wondering—the men audibly, the officers silently, but no less obscenely—just what Abraham and his tribe had seen in such a country. Mile after mile of it, treeless, arid, and harshly rolling, lay round about us. Not so depressing, perhaps, as the desert we had left behind at Rafah, in March; not so difficult, unquestionably, as that stretch of God-forsaken territory east of the oasis of Ayun Musa, where we had done a lonely two months' outpost tour in 1916; but a very disagreeable country, nevertheless. A Khamsin wind, hot as the blast from an open furnace door, disturbed minute particles of dust and grit with impartial abandon over horse and man, with detrimental results to the dispositions of both.

I had just finished inspecting my section, when Babcock, my senior subaltern of the battery and acting officer commanding, who had been called to Brigade headquarters for a conference, cantered back to the head of the column, ordered his reconnaissance party to mount, and without a word to us moved off with them in the direction of the enemy lines. Whereupon, the men disposed themselves comfortably in the shade of the horses and vehicles. There was no other shade. A temperature of 120 degrees made recourse to the water bottles inevitable and I was forced to remind the drinkers that, as there were no wells within twenty miles, it would be wise to leave the bottles alone until we knew definitely what we had to do. I was worried about the horses. They stood listlessly, most of them debilitated by sand colic. I noticed a new leader in the gun team of one of my sub-sections. Calling for the sergeant, I asked: "What's the matter with the gray, Schofield?"

"Sorry sir," he replied, a little confused. "In the rush of getting ready for this stunt, I forgot to tell you he went west last night. Vet. opened him up, sir, and found ten pounds of perishin' sand in him. I shouldn't be surprised to see more of 'em drop if we have to do any gallopinin'. Look at that pair over there, sir, nosing around in the dust for grass roots; they'll get a damn sight more sand than anything else, if I'm any judge."

---

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

"Well, sergeant," I observed, looking round for an un-pre-empted bit of shade, "if all goes well we should be out of this wilderness and in the land of milk and honey soon; here comes the O.C."

\* \* \* \* \*

**B** ABCOCK bucketed up in a cloud of dust, shouted for the officers, and waxed eloquent in the approved gunnery school manner. "Here's the situation, gentlemen, The Yeomanry are in the process of taking over from the Australians the outpost line El Buggar, Point 720, Point 630, El Gehier. See it on your maps? Right. As you all know, we are concentrating for a push in the direction of Beersheba, and the Yeomanry have orders to keep all Turk patrols from seeing what's going on back here, which means that the line is to be held at all costs. I have been detailed to furnish artillery support for the two posts on the right flank—El Buggar and Point 720. A battery from the 53rd Division is being brought up to cover the left flank; however, that has nothing to do with us."

Turning to me he went on.

"Tommy, I'm sending you out to observe at Point 720 where Major Lauder will have his squadron headquarters. Unfortunately, when 'A' battery moved out this morning they reeled in all their wire. We have to divide the battery, so there won't be enough wire for both sections to use 'phones, and I am going to ask you, Tommy, to use flags. Take Corporal Mannix with you, and your groom to act as horse-holder for you both."

He pointed to the eastern horizon. "See that hut on the skyline?"

"Yes, sir."

"That's 720. Basil will take the right section to a position in the vicinity of that group of mud buildings which you can see on your map a mile or so east of here, on the El Buggar trail. I will pick a position of assembly—it may as well be right here, since you all know this spot—in case of retirement. The left section will be in reserve behind that hill which you can see about 400 yards to our left.

"Basil, you will arrange to have a signaller posted in front of the battery so that he can get in touch with Corporal Mannix at

### INSTITUTE LIBRARY

The Alberta Military Institute will be pleased to receive donations of books, on Military matters, biographies or other similar subjects, for its library.



## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

daybreak? Right. Now, Tommy, you and your party better go along with Basil and get what rest you can, because you should be on your way by four o'clock in the morning."

"Any reason, sir, why I couldn't go up now, and get my post set up?" I queried.

"No reason at all, except that you will be a damn sight more comfortable back with the guns during the night, and no bloody good to us without a phone if the Turk takes a notion to raid the line before morning. You stay with Basil tonight".

"All right, sir," I assented, secretly pleased that I wouldn't have to spend a night in a mud hut which was sure to be infested with fleas. "I think I should have another man, though, sir, just in case we don't hit the outpost line at 720. Then I can send him back to Basil with the necessary information".

Babcock was a funny devil. He didn't like suggestions, and promptly vetoed this one. "There'll be no activity out there to-morrow", he said, "and Basil will have oodles of time to locate your signaller if he's where he should be, or near it. Carry on with the right section, Basil. That's all, gentlemen".

\* \* \* \* \*

"MANNIX, my lad," I observed to the corporal, several hours later, as the two of us, followed by Nuttal, the groom, picked our way warily along a miserable track, our horses shying and snorting at the rocky obstructions which loomed up occasionally in the dim moonlight: "Did it strike you, when we heard that machine gun fire a few minutes back, that Johnny Turk might be planning a raid on the outpost line this morning? If so, you and I are going to realize that pushing out into the blue with no telephone isn't all it's cracked up to be."

Mannix, a hard-bitten, taciturn coal miner from the north of England, grunted sourly.

"'Ow in the bloody 'ell, sir," he inquired, "are we expected to find this blinkin' post in the middle of the blasted night?"

Now, this was something I had been puzzling over. According to the inadequate map I carried, the trail we were on ran through the ruined village of El Buggar, which was supposed to be occupied by our troops. We would be almost sure to strike a sentry, who would direct us to Point 720, I thought.

I said so.

"All very fine, sir", commented little Nuttal, a snub-nosed youth, impertinent as a monkey, and of very little use except around horses, "supposin' we goes slap through the ruddy outpost line, and finds ourselves wanderin' about like babes in the woods when the blinkin' sun comes up; what then?"

"Nothing to it, Nuttal", I replied airily. "If that happens, we'll just take a good look around the country, and trot over to 720 to take up our position of observation. Of course, if there is a patrol of Turks nosing about, we'll probably be shot at, which won't slow our speed down any, will it, Nuttal?"

"You're bloody right it won't, sir", rejoined Nuttal and Mannix, in one breath. "Let's hope we make connections with the outpost sentries, sir", went on Mannix. "I don't fancy running races with Turkish cavalry. If they catch us they'll have us building roads for 'em quick as you could say 'knife.' "

"They don't feed their prisoners so good, sir, accordin' to what I'm told," added Nuttal, feelingly. He was a real trencherman, was that lad, with a penchant for strawberry jam, a commodity which was all too scarce in this theatre of war, and the thought of digging ditches as a prisoner-of-war, on such fare as dates and rice, appalled him. I could hear him muttering as we rode on.

It was getting definitely lighter. I thought we should be nearing the outpost line, and was telling the men to keep their eyes open for sentries, when, suddenly, not far to our left, the sharp crackle of a Hotchkiss automatic made us all jump.

"Cripes," whispered Nuttal, nervously, " 'Oo the bleedin' 'ell's that?"

" 'Otchkiss, by the sound of it", said Mannix. "Like enough, some sentry's thought he seen a Johnny patrol out there, and loosed off a clip on the chance it might hit something".

That was my idea too. The nearness oof the firing made me think that the Yeomanry could not be very far in front now, and in my eagerness to be in position by daylight, I decided to speed up a little.

We trotted through a shallow wadi and emerged into what appeared to be a broad, open plain. As we did so, another prolonged burst of machine gun fire rattled in our ears. In perfect alignment, all three of us swung around to the left. " 'Struth," said Mannix, pointing with an excited forefinger, "there's the perishin' mud 'ut you told us was to be our O.P., sir. We're way out in front of it. What the 'ell do you think they're firin' at? They seem to be havin' a rare go, sir".

I looked about me. It was pretty light now, with objects quite distinct at half a mile. Suddenly I started.

"Dirty old Highland Mary," I shouted. "I should jolly well think they do see something, Mannix. Just take a look yonder. Those are not our fellows. By the look of things the Turks have turned out the whole Sheria garrison this morning".

"And by the same token, sir," answered Mannix, "we'd better 'op it, or that bunch of cavalry on our right will be close enough to cut us off".

Taking another comprehensive glance around, I saw a strong enemy force deploying half a mile or so, in front of me; saw a couple of troops of cavalry disappearing into a wadi not far to the right, and forthwith gave the word to retire. That we had overshot our outpost line was quite evident.

The thing to do, obviously, was to scamper back into the draw from which we had just emerged, and make our way to the nearest outpost sentry. Our decision was slightly accented by a few rounds from a Turkish machine gun, but we probably would have moved fairly fast in any case. We were feeling a bit lonely in the presence of all those Turks out there, and the mud hut looked a long, long way off. I was relieved when as we cantered along a challenge in English stopped us.

"Halt, who goes there?"

"Artillery observation party," I replied. What post is this?"

"El Buggar, sir", said the sentry. "You'll find the sergeant in charge over that hill," pointing to a pimple shaped elevation fifty yards or so to the rear.

## Bank of Montreal

Established 1817

SAVINGS  
DEPARTMENT  
at all  
BRANCHES

## All the best in HARDWARE and its allied lines

A STORE SERVICE  
unequalled for reliability  
which in 69 years has  
become the largest and  
best in Western Canada.

## ASHDOWNS

110 Eighth Ave. W. Calgary

Handing our horses to Nuttal, who wasted no time tucking himself and the mounts well away from any possible line of fire, Mannix and I crawled up beside the N.C.O., introduced ourselves, and peered cautiously over the brow of the hill.

"Looks like quite a show, sergeant," I commented, busying myself with my compass. "Bearing 85 degrees, Mannix. Take it down. I'm going to observe from here. Looks like a waste of time going over to 720. Couldn't improve on this location, anyway".

"I think you're right, sir", commented the Yeomanry sergeant, his eyes glued on the Turkish formations. "There's a four-gun battery of '77's preparing for action just behind those infantry blokes over there, and as soon as they start operating on that mud hut it's not going to be healthy in the vicinity of Point 720. If you set up your O.P. there you'd have plenty to worry about besides shooting your guns, sir".

"Get busy, Mannix. Stay well below this crest, and do your damndest to get in touch with the guns in a hurry", I ordered. "We have no phone, sergeant," I went on. "The guns are a mile and a half back along the trail. and there wasn't enough wire. Hell of a note eh?"

"Yes, sir", agreed the N.C.O. "This visual signalling is all very well on the parade ground, but in a show like this may turn out to be, a phone's what's wanted.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE first ranging rounds from the Turk '77's were already crashing down in the neighborhood of 720. Looking over there I could see Yeomanry troopers leaving the hut and taking post in an old trench which appeared to be on the reverse slope of the hill, just out of sight of enemy observation. Carrying my eye south and east from the hut, I took a good look at our adversaries. There were a lot of them in sight. It looked as if two or three regiments of cavalry, a battalion of infantry, and a battery of artillery had been detailed to mop up the outpost line. Not more than a thousand yards in front of us the bulk of the cavalry were drawn up. Dust clouds on both flanks indicated that additional troops were taking up positions of support. From the noise emanating from the direction of Point 630, I assumed that the enemy was attacking there, too. On an elevation in the rear of the cavalry, a stout officer was consulting a map. I judged him to be the artillery observer, and hoped that I would be able to direct a round or two close enough to him to disturb his equilibrium, and perhaps his fire control, which appeared to be very accurate . . . already one or two of his ranging shrapnel had plunked into the mud hut.

Mannix wasn't having any luck in establishing communication with the guns, and I wasn't feeling any too chipper about the situation. If Basil failed to locate me before the horsemen we had

seen working around to our right took it into their heads to roll us up, the half-dozen Yeomen holding El Buggar would have little chance of surviving death or a Turkish prison, and the post at 720 would, most certainly, meet the same fate, with Turks on both sides of them. I wondered why I had not been more insistent in my demand for an additional man to run messages.

"Sergeant", I said to the Yeomanry N.C.O., as we watched the Turkish shells pepper the ground round about 720. "What are the chances of borrowing a man to gallop back and show my signallers where to locate me?"

"My God, sir, I'd like to right enough," responded the sergeant, "but my orders are to hold this post at all costs. And with only six effective rifles available, I'd catch it if I lent you one of them".

I shrugged.

"Don't say I didn't ask you, then, sergeant. It's your pigeon, but you must admit that if your C.O. knew that there were only thirty or forty Turks over there on our flank he would probably send out a reserve squadron at once to relieve the pressure. I think you hold our extreme right flank, unless there are some Anzacs at Rashid Bek, three miles, or so, to the south. If that's so, nobody has seen these Johnnies except ourselves. Of course, their dust may have been spotted by Brigade headquarters, but they are so far away that any estimate they might make would be inaccurate. If they get wind-up back there God knows what may happen. It's likely to happen anyway by the look of things, so why don't you take a chance and lend me a man to help me locate my signaller? Just as soon as I get in touch with the guns I can get them to relay information to Brigade which may lead to some mounted troops being sent out on our right before we all get scuppered".

"Sorry, sir, but I daren't chance it", was all I could get out of the sergeant, and I had to twiddle my thumbs miserably while Mannix continued to wag his signal flags to the accompaniment of much obscenity anent vague instructions and shortage of wire. I had, of course, prepared all the necessary data to bring fire on to the centre of the Turkish line with a minimum of delay, once communications were set up.

The minutes wore on, with the bombardment of the mud hut increasing in intensity. Johnny's gunners were using High Explosive shells now, and puffs of black smoke, followed a split second later by the dull thud of the bursts, and clouds of debris and dust from the entrails of the hut, indicated that soon it would cease to be of any use even as a reference point. An occasional shell was being pushed over our way too. I hoped Nuttal would be able to dodge these whizz-bangs, because if we had to make a quick break for safety, horses would be most useful.

\* \* \* \* \*

**I**T MUST have been nearly 8 a.m. when the Turkish cavalry started to move slowly toward our line. They were in fairly close formation, evidently making for a position of assembly from which they could attack either mounted or dismounted, as circumstances warranted. Quietly, I loosened my Webley .45 in its holster. Things were beginning to cook now, apparently. I looked down at Mannix.

"Corporal," I said, "Do you realize that this show has been going on long enough for those blasted guns to be man-handled up here and back again, and that you haven't been able to even get a glimpse of that ruddy signaller? Are you sure you've been looking in the right direction? Damn it, it doesn't seem reasonable that someone back there wouldn't have spotted you by this time".

"Just a minute, sir", barked Mannix, "there's something—by Jesus, it's a flag.

"Good, give him this. Target, enemy cavalry . . . Compass bearing 82 degrees . . . Angle of sight, zero. . . . Both guns ranging, percussion. . . . Four-six, four thousand. . . . Two-five seconds, Fire".

Vigorous waggings between Mannix and the battery signaller indicated that the orders were getting down. Soon the sharp crack of an eighteen pounder from the rear warned me to watch for my first round. I scanned enemy territory for the burst, but it didn't show up. "Unobserved," I told Mannix. Then the second round at four thousand yards 'whooshed' overhead to crash down just in front of what I took to be the Turkish main body. It was close enough to cause the fat artillery observer to snatch up his map and beat a quick retreat behind the crest. My line of fire appeared to be correct enough for the type of target and I ordered:

"Three-nine, three-six".

Two more shells quickly landed. This time, both were in front of the main body, with the shorter range hitting 'plop' in the middle of a troop of the advancing cavalry. The latter had been moving slowly in fairly close order, taking advantage of the slight roll in the terrain. But when my round pitched into the middle of them, knocking over two or three horses, and causing one of the riders to describe a beautiful parabola before he returned to earth, a quick deployment was effected.

The increased frontage now covered by the Turk horsemen made it necessary for me to distribute my rounds along it in order to catch the blighters properly. "Three-six hundred, five rounds gun fire. . . . Sweep one degree," I bawled at Mannix.

Over came the rounds, and the result from an artillery man's viewpoint was excellent. The high explosive shells, bursting in the rocky, stony soil, sent clouds of smoke, dust and rocks among the scurrying Turks, tumbling some out of their saddles and causing

many more to hesitate and start backward in search of cover. I had the attack just about stopped, I thought, and told Mannix to send down 'repeat'.

He started to do so, then stopped and said, "Gawd luv' us sir, they won't take the message . . . they're ordering us in."

"To hell with that idea, Mannix," I howled. "Get that order through."

"No use, sir," he said, after another attempt. "They just repeat the 'come in' signal over and over again. Guess we'll have to pack up. Bloody shame if you arsk me, sir."

"All right then, pack up", I said, knocking out the heel of my pipe against a rock with such violence that the stem broke. "Let's have the horses here as quick as you can".

\* \* \* \* \*

"DAMN the windy blighters," I muttered to the Yeomanry sergeant, as I started putting my instruments away. "First ruddy time I ever knew Babcock to worry about me. Much better idea would have been to send up the other section with a cavalry screen to protect our right against those Turks we saw over there some time ago. Then we could have held them in front at any rate, long enough for Brigade to reinforce the post at 720. Looks like a muck up to me. I wouldn't like to be in your shoes, sergeant, if they don't get some support up to you soon."

The N.C.O. smiled grimly as I wished him luck, and prepared to push off.

"Luck, sir!" He said. "The best bloody luck we'll get out of this show will be a trip to Constantinople. Look at that dust out on the right. Our pals are sneaking up on us behind those knolls over there . . . should start sniping soon. Oh-ho, I thought so," as one of our rifles spoke. "Did you see anything, Newman?"

"Yus, sergeant," answered the trooper. "A couple of Johnnies popped their 'eads up over that 'ill, there. I makes it about four hundred yards."

"Right," said the N.C.O. "Keep your eyes peeled".

"Better get a move on, sir", he went on, casually. "If their scouts are within four hundred yards, the rest of them can't be very far off. Tell 'em what's what when you get back, and try to persuade 'em to push a patrol out to give us a hand. I guess we'll just have to stay here and take what's coming. Now that you're gone, we have no communication with anyone. We couldn't retire if they wanted us to, now."

He was a stout fellow, and I have since learned that he went down fighting. Promising to do what I could, I loped down the hill, mounted, and trotted off, as the Turkish bullets began to whip up the dust in front and rear of the post. I was just getting away in time, it appeared.

Closely followed by Nuttal, Mannix and I cantered down the trail leading to the rear. At 720, which we could quite easily see on our right, shells from the .77 battery continued to toss the remnants of the mud hut hither and thither. Around us, rifle and machine gun bullets, probably overs from the north, and hasty rounds fired by the flanking party to the south, buzzed like wasps, and made nasty 'plupping' noises in the dust at our horses' feet. Two or three minutes riding, however, put us fairly well out of range.

\* \* \* \* \*

AT THE battery position we looked around for further signs of the enemy flank movement. As far as I could see, they were concentrating on the post at El Buggar, and were making no effort to penetrate more deeply into our territory. The guns were trotting back along the trail about half a mile ahead of us. Getting a move on, we soon caught up with Basil.

"What's up old man?" I asked, as I pulled up beside him.

"Damned if I know," he rejoined. "Got a message from Babcock to pull out and join the other section . . . nothing else to do but call you in. Hey, where you off to?"

"Going to see Babcock," I shouted back as I galloped away, with Nuttal pelting up behind.

It didn't take me long to locate the other section. The guns were in position behind a slight elevation, but not firing. Babcock, standing on a rise in front and slightly to one side, was peering through his glasses as I dashed up, dismounted, and ran up to him. "Oh, hello, Tommy", he said, "what seems to be biting you?"

"Christ Almighty, sir!" I began. "What in hell did you bring us back for? Those lads up there need support in the worst way. Surely to God they've got enough reserves round about to spare a squadron to look after the right. There are only fifty or so Turks out there — saw 'em myself. The blasted show has been going on for four hours, and what's been done? Not a bloody thing, as far as I can see, but withdraw the guns just when they're needed. What's the ruddy infantry brigade doing over there sitting on its backside? Tired, I suppose! A couple of companies could have marched up to El Buggar long before this. What's the matter? Wind-up the high places?"



"Well, Tommy," Babcock replied, "we have to take orders and say nothing, even if we know the wrong things are being done. Col. Buckley of the Yeomanry is back on that hill a few hundred yards to our rear, in a hell of a stew. He doesn't want to lose his men any more than we do, but he apparently has to choose between supporting his squadron at 720 and the one at 630 which is also being hard pressed. He has no call on those infantry over there, and, as far as I know, has been unable to convince Brigade that troops sent out on the right would have any influence whatever on the outcome of the business. Lauder, at 720, has sent in a message that the situation is becoming serious, but that he will hold out to the last. I had no choice but to bring the guns back because Brigade dithered so much about sending somebody out on the right. I agree with you that the show has been going on long enough for supports to have reached the outposts, but you never know what's at the back of the Divisional Commander's mind. He may be willing to sacrifice those men in order to keep the Turk in ignorance of the infantry concentration going on back here. However, I'm going to call up Brigade and give them your view of the situation. How many Turks would you say there are in front of 720?"

"About six hundred cavalry, the same number of infantry, and a damn good battery of .77's. Austrian, I would say, because the observer was certainly not a Turk — saw him very plainly, and damn near hit him with a ranging round."

\* \* \* \* \*

THEN I told him about overshooting the outpost line and my reasons for observing El Buggar.

"Just as well for you that you did," he commented, "though Basil must have lost a lot of time looking for your man in the direction of 720. I don't think many of the squadron will get away, do you?"

"I'll give the Turks another hour or so to mop up both posts," I said. "By the way, what's the matter with the Flying Corps? A few bombs on that lot out there would have played hell with their morale."

"I don't know, Tommy," returned the O.C. "This battery is what I have to worry about, not the general operation of the show. However, for your own private ear, I consider it to be a particularly bloody mess. Brewster," he called, "get in touch with brigade headquarters, will you?"

As the telephonist busied himself with his instrument, Babcock said, "I'll tell 'em what you say about the post at El Buggar, and suggest that they may have time to get some aid up there before it's too late."

Sergeant Brewster appeared to be having some difficulty getting the brigade major, and we could hear him arguing with the headquarters signaller. Finally he called Babcock to the phone. From the conversation which ensued I could see that Brigade knew a good deal about the situation up forward, but that they were more or less powerless in the face of it. Babcock handed the receiver back to the signaller, shrugged his shoulders, and turned to me.

"They tell me at brigade that the Australians have been ordered out from Shellal and Gambi, and will endeavor to relieve the pressure on El Buggar and 720, but I'm afraid it's going to be too late, Tommy," he said. "When I told the brigade major that in your opinion troops should be rushed up the El Buggar trail if available, to deal with the threat on the right, he got a bit shirty, and as much as told me to mind my own business; that the possibility had long since been considered, but that there were no troops — cavalry, he means — available at the moment. We are to stay here, ready to shell the Turks if they manage to get on the ridge. You may as well get on down to the wagon line and have something to eat. Locke's down there with the mess cart."

Feeling pretty low about the whole business, I rode back to the mess cart, grabbed a sandwich and a cup of tea, and went to sleep under a wagon.

Nuttal wakened me up a couple of hours later. "Movin' off, sir," he said. "The infantry have taken over and we're to go back to Shellal. El Buggar and 720 are napoo, sir," he went on in answer to my unspoken question. "All killed, they tell me, but they put up a bloody good show for seven hours. The infantry 'as orders to take the posts back tomorrow. Looks like we was lucky gettin' out when we did, sir."

And that was that. The Turks withdrew during the night with the result that the infantry were able to re-occupy the line next day without fighting.

A bloody good show for seven hours. Nevertheless, I am never going to tell Lauder, if I meet him in the next world, that I was the artillery officer shooting the battery on which he relied for support that October day of 1917. Unless, of course, Babcock is around, so that I can pass the buck.

## The Sino-Japanese Conflict

*By E. D. Arnold*

---

IN DISCUSSING this vexed question I have on several occasions endeavoured to make my position fully clear, but apparently some people, including some of my Chinese friends, have taken strong objection to my remarks. I am a lawyer by profession and I am merely presenting to you to the best of my ability the position taken by Japan in Eastern affairs. I do not profess to be a student of Oriental affairs or personally to have any knowledge of the Eastern situation. My observations are drawn from a study of the official documents and publications issued by the Japanese Government and presented to me through the charge d'affaires at Ottawa for Japan.

Japan has set forth her case in the greatest detail in very readable form, and it is my intention to give you as briefly as possible a summary of the Japanese case so that we may all perhaps have a better conception of the issues involved in this present conflict because, after all, until there is a mutual understanding there can be no hope of peace.

Now the fundamental and underlying reasons for the conflict in the Far East are not the massacres and bombings we hear so much of in the newspapers. They are deep rooted and have their birth in past generations, and with your permission I propose for a few moments to deal with what you might call ancient history because it does seem to me that in order to understand the conflict of today you must consider and appreciate the underlying reasons therefor.

\* \* \* \* \*

CHINA, as you will all know, is a very large country covering some four million square miles and having a population of four hundred million people so that in this conflict we have involved nearly one-third of the total population of the whole world. Its progress and ultimate result are of vital importance to all of us.

China is one of the oldest civilizations in the world and has generally always been considered the intellectual centre and by far the most superior people of the Far East. The empire consists of a conglomeration of races. People do not generally appreciate that there are twelve distinct races of people making up the empire. There is no common language. The languages of the different races are not understood among other races. This is due to a large extent

to the fact that communications throughout the vast area have been very limited due to the lack of transportation facilities and the primitive life of the majority of the people.

Going back to the seventeenth century and prior thereto. China was for generations subject to conflict with and invasion by the hordes to the East and South of her, but strangely enough China was never actually conquered by these invaders. They swarmed into the country and settled there, but as generations passed it was found that the invaders had been assimilated into the Chinese people, the superior race having absorbed the inferior. This process of assimilation has worked successfully on numerous occasions in past generations and become China's chief method of defence. She has never had any aspirations for extension of her empire and her sole desire has been that she be left alone in peace. She had no desire for foreign trade and developed a fear of all foreigners, which has as generations passed developed into an intensive hate.

The western races first started to trade with China in the seventeenth century when Great Britain sent traders to the empire. At first they were not allowed to enter China or to trade with the Chinese and that situation existed for some fifty years until what is known as the "opium wars" occurred between China and Great Britain over the trade in opium with India. As a result of that war, in 1842, China, for the first time, was required to open trading negotiations with a foreign country and Britain was given certain rights to trade within China in restricted areas. Britain also obtained her rights at the international settlement in Shanghai at that time but her right to trade was limited to five or six other coastal cities.

#### INSTITUTE MEMBERSHIP

Membership in the Alberta Military Institute is open to all officers and ex-officers of His Majesty's Naval, Military and Air Forces. Annual fee, \$5.00 per annum. Those residing outside a radius of ten miles of Calgary may take out a Non-Resident Membership, without voting power, for \$1.00 per annum.

Full particulars will be furnished on application to the Honorary Secretary, Alberta Military Institute, c/o Headquarters, Military District No. 13, Public Building, Calgary, Alberta.

Within the next twenty-five or thirty years France also invaded China and as a result of that invasion France also obtained rights to trade at the coastal cities and at Shanghai.

Japan then came into the picture. Korea, which is the peninsula which hangs down towards Japan on the Chinese coast, was an independent state at that time and China decided that she would annex Korea to the Chinese empire. I have not studied the details of that invasion but Japan apparently felt that it was impossible to let China control Korea in view of its proximity to Japan as a point of contact in time of war, so Japan invaded Korea and took over control from the Chinese. As a result of an agreement made due to pressure from Britain and France, Japan withdrew from Korea, reserving however, a right of supervision in that country. As a consideration for doing so China entered into her first trade agreement with Japan and I would like for a moment to refer briefly to that agreement to indicate the right which Japan obtained in China.

The agreement in part reads as follows:

Japanese subjects may with their families, employees, servants, frequent, reside, and carry on trade, industry, and manufacture, or pursue other lawful functions in ports, cities, and towns of China, which are now or may hereafter be open to trade.

That referred to the five cities in which Britain and France were trading.

They are at liberty to proceed to and from any of the open ports with their merchandise and effects, and within the limits of those places which have been or may hereafter be set apart for use . . . They are allowed to rent or lease lands, and to build churches, cemeteries and hospitals.

As I have already indicated China had no desire to trade with outside nations and she was alarmed to find that the western people and the Japanese who entered her boundaries as a result of trade agreements did not assimilate with her people and she had to find new means to expel them. At the beginning of the nineteenth century China resorted to force to expel the foreigners and this in time brought on the Boxer uprisings with which you are familiar. China was unsuccessful and another very serious change then took place. The nations of the world who had trade agreements with China as a result of the Boxer uprisings forced China to agree to the stationing of foreign troops in all of the ports at which the foreign nations traded, to protect that trade and their citizens. As a result, since 1900, France, Britain, United States of America and Japan have all had their troops stationed at all the leading merchandising cities of China, and in addition have exercised their right to patrol the Yangtze river for a distance of 1,500 miles inland. Chinese are a proud people and the bitterness which developed due to her forced trading with the nations was intensified many times by the stationing of foreign troops within her borders.

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**IME marches on. Since 1894, seventy thousand Japanese have migrated into China and trade relations between the two countries have developed to the extent that it comprises 25 per cent. of the total trade of the Chinese empire. Japan has by far the greatest number of citizens in China, the greatest financial interest and her trade is the greatest of any foreign nation. That is, of course, due, to a large extent, to her proximity to China and her need of natural resources.

China has indeed been unfortunate. Shortly after having made concessions to Britain, France and Japan she was again forced to bow to the will of the foreigner by the invasion of Manchuria by Russia. Japan came to the assistance of China and the Japanese-Russian war resulted. Japan maintains that she saved Manchuria for China and thereby obtained vested rights in that area. By treaty, China then extended her trade relations with Japan by permitting Japan to carry on trade with Manchuria. In addition, Japanese soldiers were to police the railways of Manchuria and the Koreans and Japanese were permitted to farm, and own land and explore for minerals in that area.

China had never been reconciled to this invasion by foreigners. She had failed to assimilate them and she had failed to expel them by force and she now attempted another process, "boycott."

The history of the Sino-Japanese boycott I found intensely interesting. It shows what can be done by education, propaganda and a combined will to accomplish a result. The first boycott was in 1905 and was against the United States of America over some incident which arose in China. There were two other boycotts immediately following, one in 1908 and one in 1925 against Japan. There was a boycott in 1925 against Great Britain and further ones in 1927 and 1929 against Japan. These boycotts in their infancy made very little difference to the general trade of the country. I think the figures would indicate that the first one caused a reduction of from 10 to 15 per cent. in the trade relations of the country affected, but their proficiency developed as they became more understood and as the bitter hate towards Japan particularly developed. The last boycott against Japan in 1932 had the result of cutting off trade from the Japanese people in China to the extent of nearly 80 per cent. of the total business in some areas. You will realize immediately the tremendous effect that would have on seventy thousand Japanese people in China, and also on the Japanese people as a whole.

Japan has always bitterly objected to the Chinese breach of its trade agreement with Japan, and particularly the lack of control exercised by the Chinese government over its people, resulting in banditry and piracy being rampant in the country and on the high seas, to the detriment of peaceful trade relations between the two countries. The dispute culminated in 1915 with what are known as the "Twenty-one Demands on China by Japan". Japan required

China to re-affirm their right to trade in China proper and her extended right in Manchuria, and also required China to guarantee the safety of the Japanese people in China and to maintain peace and order on the high seas and in the locality of the trade cities.

The maintenance of order and good government in China is one of the greatest problems she has to face and I again wish to go back to ancient history for a moment, to give you a picture of the history of the Chinese Government.

\* \* \* \* \*

CHINA has always been a peaceful country in so far as her relations with her neighbors are concerned, but she has been anything but peaceful within her own borders. The original government in China under the Mañchu dynasty consisted of a series of war lords throughout the country and their only real tie with the head of the empire was their blood relationship with the emperor. Practically all of the war lords were cousins or uncles of the ruler for the time being, and any unity there was came through this blood relationship, and as long as it existed it was perhaps the most successful form of unity that has ever developed in China.

## Outstanding Scores feature 1938 Dominion Marksmen Target Rifle Competitions

The following outstanding scores made in 1938 Dominion Marksmen Small Bore Competitions are a tribute to both competitors and ammunition. In all of these matches, "Dominion" Ammunition was used exclusively. The cartridges, famous from coast to coast, have once again proven the accuracy and dependability of the "Ammunition of Champions."

Here are the results of four competitions:

800 x 800—the perfect score! Made by Frank Lewis of the Sunny Brae Rifle Club, Moncton, N.B., in the Outdoor Small Bore Competition (fired at 50 and 100 yards.)

499 x 500—Team Championship won by the Sunny Brae Rifle Club in the Senior League competition.

500 x 500—another perfect score! Individual Championship won by Reverend G. S. Beckett of the Sunny Brae Rifle Club after shoot-off.

1492 x 1500—This excellent score was made by the St. John High School Rifle Club, Saint John, N.B., winning the Junior Team Championship. This match was only open to those under 19 years of age.

Year by year the high reputation of "Dominion" Ammunition is being maintained and strengthened by scoring results such as these. In the competitions mentioned above, sponsored by Dominion Marksmen, the target cartridges used were "Dominion" "Central V's," "Super-Accurate" Lesmok, and "Super-Clean" Greased.

ALL "DOMINION" AMMUNITION  
has "Super-Clean," Non-Mercuric Priming

## "DOMINION" AMMUNITION

"Always



Dependable"

CANADIAN INDUSTRIES LIMITED. HEAD OFFICE: MONTREAL, QUE.

"Dominion" Ammunition Division

Branches:—St. John's, Nfld. - Halifax - Toronto - Winnipeg - Saskatoon - Edmonton  
Vancouver

The Manchu dynasty carried on until the revolution which took place in 1911. We all know that there was conflict and civil strife in China for a period of nearly twenty years. Out of that conflict and strife there arose the government of Doctor Sun. Doctor Sun founded three principles. They were Nationalism, Democracy and Socialism, Nationalism was the equalization of all the races in China, and what was most important in so far as our discussion tonight is concerned, the abrogation of all foreign treaties. Democracy, the control by the people, and Socialism supervision by the state.

The development of this National Government was founded on force and fear. The existing war lords had been dominated by force but that was so only so long as the force was present. It could not possibly lead to any degree of unity or harmony among the people. New war lords and bandits and pirates were uprising all over the country and along the seashore, having no regard whatever for the central government and the central government having no means by which to subdue these forces. During this period also, Communism made its appearance in China and took a strong foothold, and more than anything else has widened the breach of relationship between Japan and China. Communism has no place in the development of the Japanese nation with their ideals of empire and their emperor. The Japanese people have a very real and ever present fear of the developments of Communism in China.

\* \* \* \* \*

JAPAN did not accomplish a great deal by her Twenty-One Demands in 1915. As a result of negotiations she dropped a great number of them and as a result of negotiation China agreed to some of them; but, in the net result, negotiations only had the result of developing and intensifying the hate of the Chinese people towards the Japanese. I think that perhaps it was then that the Chinese people realized that perhaps their only hope of unity was in the hate of a common enemy, because about that time an intensive educational program of propaganda against the Japanese developed in China. The Chinese have always dealt in generations instead of weeks and they were not satisfied to teach only their grown men and women, but started in their primary schools and carried on this educational programme throughout the public schools and universities, through the armies and civil life.

I would like to give you a few examples of the form this programme took. Teachers of a primary school in Shantung were required to go through the following catechism with their children each day:

- |                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Q. Of what nationality are you?    | A. I am Chinese.           |
| Q. In what Province were you born? | A. I was born in Shantung. |
| Q. Do you love Shantung?           | A. Yes, I do.              |
| Q. Do you love China?              | A. Yes, I do.              |
| Q. Who is China's greatest enemy?  | A. Japan.                  |
| Q. Who formerly owned Korea?       | A. China.                  |



and so on for some two and a half pages of questions of that type, to arouse the bitterest antagonism against Japan. This is followed up through to the university.

The oaths taken by soldiers in certain portions of the country is in the following form:

Q. To what country did Formosa belong? A. It belonged to China. Q. What country occupies it now? A. It is occupied by the Japanese devils

There can be no doubt China has accomplished more by this programme than by any other previous attempt to expel the foreigners from her boundaries. Students of oriental affairs are unanimous in the belief that there is greater unity in China today than there ever has been. They have forgotten all their own petty quarrels and troubles in meeting a common hated enemy. But how can there ever be any peace in the Orient and national life and prosperity for China built on such conception of her relations with her neighbors?

\* \* \* \* \*

NOW, turning to more recent times and the present conflict, we must, of course, first consider the 1932 conflict because it is out of that dispute that the present one arose. The 1932 conflict really arose out of Japan's relations with Manchuria. Since the Russian-Japanese War, due to Japanese influence, Manchuria had prospered. In the last thirty years the population has increased from fifteen million to thirty million people. 43 per cent. of the railways of the Chinese empire are situated in Manchuria. It has only 9 per cent. of the area of China proper and one-third of the total export trade of China goes from the province of Manchuria. During the period of the revolution in China proper, Manchuria was in a state of rest, development, progress and financial improvement. The state of sanitation, health, schools and other phases of modern life have developed to a far greater extent in Manchuria than in the rest of China. The Japanese point to these improvements in Manchuria and its development and claim that it is due to their influence in that Province and they will not broach any interference from the central government. Japan claims that in respect to Manchuria she has a very definite vested right in that country, not only due to her treaty but due to the fact that she saved Manchuria for China from the Russians. 'She does not wish to annex the territory but does claim the right to have her people trade there and the right of Koreans to migrate to that area to farm and work the mines and forests. It is vital to the very existence of Japan that she should have these natural resources and she will not tolerate any curtailment of her rights in that area.

The growth of the feeling in China against Japan was intensified by the apparent prosperity of Manchuria and the central

government attempted by regulation and taxation to prevent the Japanese from exploiting Manchuria. The feeling ran high and a crisis was reached which inevitably led to armed conflict. An attack was made by some Chinese irregulars on a guard of one of the Manchurian railways and a general conflict resulted. If there had not been that incident another one was bound to arise.

The 1932 conflict would have been confined to the northern area, except that China's central government decided to weaken the Japanese forces in Manchuria by attacking the Japanese settlement at Shanghai. You are all familiar with the desperate struggle which was finally determined by the peaceful intervention of France, Britain and the United States, and a treaty reached.

Japan insisted upon a demilitarized zone being established on the Manchurian border and at Shanghai. That apparently is not an uncommon practice in modern times and we have a similar situation existing after the Great War on the French border. The Chinese agreed to a demilitarized area on the Manchurian border for a distance of some eighty miles and also that a demilitarized area at Shanghai should extend to a point where the troops were stationed at the cessation of hostilities in 1932.

Unfortunately although a truce was declared there was no real desire for peace. The growing hatred of the Chinese for the Japanese could not possibly be curtailed overnight and the general

IF YOU WANT TO TASTE REAL HAM

TRY

**BURNS' 5 POINT**

"Deliciously Tender  
Baked, Broiled or  
Fried"



Quickly Prepared  
in 7 to 8 minutes  
to the pound

*"The 5 Points the way to Better Meals"*

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

government in China had no power with which to restrain the propaganda, boycotting, banditry and piracy which was rampant in the country. Another conflict was inevitable.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE first clash of the present conflict is known as the Marco Polo bridge incident. Apparently some Japanese troops were training on training ground which, under an international agreement, they were permitted to do, and a Chinese garrison was stationed some little distance over a railway embankment. The Chinese say the Japanese came over the railway embankment and the Japanese say that, if they came over the embankment, it was a mistake, but in any event shooting started and some soldiers were killed. The Japanese immediately attempted to have the question settled as a local issue as they had found by experience that if they could localize disputes and have them settled by the local authorities in charge of the particular area, international issues did not develop as they did when the national government entered the picture. A great number of incidents had been disposed of on that basis during the past five years prior to the present conflict.

The national government, however, refused to have the incident settled as a local issue and instructed the despatch of troops to the demilitarized area on the border of Manchuria. Shortly thereafter irregulars of the Chinese army invaded a small town of Tungchow, and massacred some three or four hundred Japanese citizens. The situation then became very tense at Shanghai. The Japanese, fearing a recurrence of the 1931-1932 incident, ordered the transportation of all their nationals on the Yangtze River to Shanghai and they evacuated the whole of the Yangtse Valley. Some eleven or twelve thousand people were evacuated to the foreign settlement at Shanghai and the Japanese considered it necessary, after consultation with British and French interest, to order a further division of soldiers and battleships to their portion of the international area to protect these additional people. That step immediately called for further action by China and the entry of Chinese troops into the demilitarized area outside of Shanghai. In respect to this incident there are three or four excerpts in foreign periodicals which I would like to read to you to give you some idea of the reaction of British, French and American interest in China to the developments at that time.

\* \* \* \* \*

AN article in The Shanghai monthly, Oriental Affairs, of September, 1937, reads as follows:

The dispatch of the two Chinese Regular Divisions—the 87th and the 88th—into the demilitarized zone, and their occupation of the northern boundary of the Settlement, was an undeniable breach of the 1932 Agreement. It is explicable only on the theory that the Nanking Government decided that if there was to be a military showdown with the Japanese it

would elect to use its best troops and material in the Shanghai area, rather than in the north, owing to the fact that enormous international interests were involved, and international intervention might therefore be expected. It is not being argued here that this decision was unjustified. A Government that considers itself to be the subject of aggression may reasonably claim the option of deciding where to meet the alleged aggressor. But it is not tenable to pretend that the Japanese were the aggressors in Shanghai, whatever they may have done in the north. Nearly every action of theirs went to prove their desire to avoid being involved in another outbreak of hostilities in Shanghai. They had evacuated their nationals from all the Yangtze ports, including their important Hankow Concession. They had refrained from anything in the nature of an ultimatum in connection with the Hungjao incident. The arrival of the Third Fleet and the landing of reinforcements therefrom, on August 11th, was a tactless move, but it can hardly seriously be pretended that an addition of 1,000 Blue-jackets to the Naval Landing Party foreshadowed an intention to attack Chinese territory. At the outside there were not more than 3,300 to 4,000 men here when the reinforcements had been landed. They had a community of about 20 to 25 thousand civilians to defend. And after their experiences in 1932 it is inconceivable that, confronted by 20 to 30 thousand troops drawn from China's German-trained Divisions they would have opened an offensive.

You have read a great deal of the tragic bombing incidents and the killing of thousands of innocent people. The Japanese claim that the Chinese forces, numbering thirty to forty thousand soldiers, entered the demilitarized Chinese area at Shanghai adjoining the foreign settlement and developed the area into a military base. By so doing they made it subject to attack, and the Japanese were perfectly justified in attacking it as a military base. If the Chinese wished to leave their own nationals in that area and subject them to the dangers of being associated so closely with a military base, that was their responsibility and not that of the Japanese.

With respect to the actual bombings, there are just two incidents which I would like to refer to and they are also quotations from English papers published in Shanghai. One, the North China Daily News of the 18th of August, 1937, and the second a report of the American correspondent of the New York Times, which was despatched at that time. They read as follows:

Japanese and other foreigners and Chinese resident in Shanghai find common cause today in condemnation of the decisions which led to the terrible slaughter of peaceful citizens in the International Settlement, French Concession and certain parts of Chinese territory on Saturday. The Chinese Air Force made a ghastly debut. In a few short hours it did more harm to its country's cause in the eyes of the world than could be achieved by months of political blundering. Its attack on the Japanese cruiser proved how far human capacity falls short of the deadly efficiency of the weapons it has invented for destruction. The object was unscathed with the result that the Chinese bombers indulged in what was virtually blind bombing. The military value of the exploit was nil. The heavy roll of deaths shows that in the first major clash between the forces of China and Japan in Shanghai the combatants suffered negligible casualties. The sacrifices were made by over one thousand foreign Chinese victims.

And the New York Times correspondent:

Hongkong, August 27th.—That some international action should be agreed upon providing for armed measures or other restraints to prevent irresponsible Chinese aerial bombing and the killing of helpless civilians in Shanghai's International Settlement and the French Concession is the consensus of foreign consular, naval and military officials in Shanghai.

This opinion crystallized Monday, when another Chinese aeroplane, presumably one of those which an admiring Chinese public bought for Generalissimo Chiang Kai-shek's fiftieth birthday, smashed out nearly 200 lives and wounded or permanently maimed nearly 500 more persons.

Qualified foreign army and naval observers and precision instruments aboard American, British and French warships in the Whangpoo River disclose that the Japanese have kept their pledge that their bombers will not fly over the Shanghai refugee area. The Chinese have refused to give a similar pledge.

Automatic registration on Monday showed that when the slaughter occurred a Chinese monoplane was flying over the city at an altitude of 12,000 feet. Moreover, the registration showed the plane was making a direct line from Pootung on the east nearly over the United States cruiser "Augusta" and the customs jetty, and then along a line where a huge bomb dropped in Szechwan Road without exploding and a second bomb, which hit the Sincere's Department Store on the Nan-king Road corner exploded.

One foreign admiral's scornful comment was:

"The fliers are so badly trained as marksmen or so hysterical, excitable and irresponsible that they are like children playing with destructive weapons. In common decency they should not be entrusted with death-dealing aeroplanes."

Chinese censors struck the foregoing facts and opinions from cables and radio messages filed and even changed news cables to make it appear that doubt existed in the minds of foreign officials here that possibly the bombs came from Japanese planes but this is distinctly not true.

\* \* \* \* \*

THERE is nothing useful to be gained in arguing as to who started the fracas, but what we are all intensely interested in is when will peace be restored to the Orient. In my brief study of this conflict I could not help but compare China and India and wonder whether or not China's ultimate destiny does not lie along the same tracks. She has the same tremendous areas and the vast millions of primitive people of different races as India has, and I wonder if she can at the present time establish any form of government which can control her people and enforce her obligations to her neighbors and the world at large. Some of the most profound students of Oriental affairs and some of the greatest friends of China in recent times have expressed the opinion that it would be China's salvation to have outside supervision as in India for the next fifty years, until her people have become accustomed and educated to central control. On the other hand Japan is faced with a tremendous problem. Is she capable of exercising that supervision

and has she the right attitude towards it? Her whole national existence depends on a stable government and peaceful and orderly conduct of her four hundred million neighbors.

In conclusion, I leave these few thoughts with you. Our sympathies are always with the underdog and an oppressed people, but we all know that there are two sides to every question and I hope I have been able to leave with you some conviction that there is a very real and present problem to be solved. I hold no brief for Japan. No doubt as much or more could be said against their attitude and actions as for them, but I do say that the whole problem can only be met and solved on the basis of a mutual understanding of the issues involved and by conciliation, concession, and compromise, which are of course always the elements necessary for lasting peace.



### LADIES' NIGHT

The Directors for some time had considered the possibility of a meeting at which ladies could be invited, and the opportunity was afforded when Mr. S. R. Vallance very kindly agreed to give an illustrated lecture on one of his many trips through the mountains; the coloured photographs taken by Mr. Vallance were of exceptional beauty, and the occasion proved a great success.

The speaker took his audience first to Banff, tarried awhile in the environs of Lake Minnewanka, then on to Lake Louise to climb Mt. Victoria. Next, a trip by packtrain up the Valley of the Horse-thief to the Lake of the Hanging Glaciers brought some exquisite scenes to the view in this rarely visited region near the headwaters of the great Columbia River. Finally a visit was made to the Columbia Icefield and the realism of the natural colour photographs enabled the audience to almost live the experience of the night at the high camp at 10,000 feet; the start across the icefield before dawn and the climb of Mt. Columbia, the second highest peak of the Canadian Rockies.

At the conclusion, Col. F. S. Shouldice, in well-chosen words expressed the thanks of the Institute to the speaker, and commented on the numerous references throughout the address to the wonderful flora and fauna of the Rockies and the accompanying photographic specimens.

## Recent Military Developments

*Summary of Address by Lieut.-Col. G. C. Bucknall, M.C.  
(The Middlesex Regiment)*

---

ADDRESSING members of the Institute on Some Recent Military Developments, Lieut.-Col. G. E. Bucknall, M.C., The Middlesex Regiment, first reminded the audience of the sincere effort made by Great Britain to solve the various international problems sensibly and peacefully and of the risks she ran by disarmament. The failure of these efforts, in the face of the obdurate attitude of the dictators, forced Great Britain to launch a vast rearmament and reorganization programme, with the unanimous support of the people. This programme, by no means yet complete, was making good progress. The difficulties were phenomenal.

A brief review of the responsibilities of the three Services, and their tasks, within this programme followed.

Colonel Bucknall pointed out that the effort involved, economic, industrial, financial, and in man power is enormous.

The effect of this as regards the Army was to limit its size and possible tasks in a future war, the chief roles being filled by the Royal Navy and the Royal Air Force—the latter forming the “spear-head” of our striking force.

The lecturer traced shortly the possible theatres of war and the suitability of the “terrain” for the operations of a force organised on modern lines. It was impossible to foresee how events might develop after the first three months of the war, but suitable opportunities would certainly occur for the employment of such a force, and a “good break” during the initial encounters of this period would be of the highest importance later.

Modern developments generally were responsible for great changes in army organization and equipment. The directions in which these developments were most felt were in “the air”, in motor transport, in modern defensive weapons and measures, in radio-graphy and in chemistry (gas).

The effect of these developments is to speed up movement and increase the normal distance of a day's march from 15 to 50 miles. On the other hand, movement and protection becomes much more complicated. Night work, cover and concealment, obstacles and bottlenecks assume great importance. Anti-air, anti-A.F.V., and anti-gas measures cannot be neglected with impunity.

\* \* \* \* \*

## **“Canadian Defence Quarterly”**

Issued in January, April, July and October.

---

Editorial and Publication Offices:

Room 209, WOODS BUILDING, SLATER STREET  
OTTAWA, ONTARIO

---

Subscription, \$1.50 per year.

---

The Canadian Defence Quarterly, now in its fifteenth year, is the only service journal in Canada which can compare with the old-established journals of a like character published in England, India and the United States, but which are rarely seen by Canadian officers. It is a magazine published for the purpose of providing a medium for the free discussion or expression of views on matters of interest in connection with Defence. The Committee assumes no responsibility for the accuracy of any statements made—nor are the opinions expressed to be considered as in any way reflecting the views or policy of the Department of National Defence. Each number contains about 130 pages of reading matter, consisting of editorials and articles of an instructive or interesting character, frequently illustrated with photographs, maps and sketches. The Committee seek no profit but aim only at making the journal pay its way; any additional funds which accrue by new subscriptions, etc., are used by them to improve the magazine. In compliance with this policy the subscription rates are kept at the lowest figure possible, viz., 50c for a single copy or \$1.50 per volume (four issues).

---

The success of the Journal is dependent upon the support it receives. May we add your name to the list of subscribers? Send \$1.50 to above address today.



TACTICALLY, therefore, in Western Europe, the old idea of the slow moving infantry advance guard, preceded by the horsed mobile troops, and organised in those well-known "packets" has gone. The principles upon which it worked remained unchanged. The requirement today is a fast-moving, armoured or semi-armoured force of all arms, capable of wide and quick reconnaissance, of driving in the less established hostile elements, and moving quickly between deep bounds, say 5 to 20 miles, probably from obstacle to obstacle, or from 'hide' to 'hide'. In attack, the necessity for considerable artillery support at the decisive place is even more evident. In defence, depth, the use of obstacles and the organization of deep demolition programmes are ever more important.

These changes are reflected naturally in our organization and equipment. Whatever may be seen in the press, good progress is being made in all branches of our re-armament, in the face of considerable difficulties.

Reorganisation of the Territorial Army, the 'second line' and the immense changes in air defence at home are outside the scope of this discussion.

\* \* \* \* \*

COLONEL Bucknall then touched shortly on the organization and types of vehicle of the mobile divisions. The 'standard' division is now of two types: (a) on a reduced scale for 'imperial policing' roles, such as that in Palestine, and (b) the expeditionary force division proper, with its full complement of 'supporting arms.'

In (b) everything has been 'motorised' except the actual companies of foot-soldiers. To carry these, an M.T. company, centrally controlled, is capable of lifting a whole brigade, plus some stores and equipment. The ordinary divisional move, therefore, becomes a combination of M.T. move on the march, and requires most efficient staff work. There are definite disadvantages to the complete mechanisation of the "standard" division.

As regards the more detailed changes, infantry rifle battalions now lose two 3-inch mortar attachments, but a 2-inch mortar appears with each platoon. To carry its Bren guns, mortar, equipment, tools, etc., each platoon has its truck. An enlarged pioneer platoon is capable of handling anti-gas problems. The introduction of a "Bren armoured carrier" platoon give the C.O. a mobile reserve of fire power for use in the battle area. Machine gun battalions are now reduced in number and lose their anti-tank companies. These are now part of the new artillery anti-tank regiment. Artillery regiments have taken the place of the old artillery brigades, a new type organization based on the performance of the 25-pounder gun-howitzer.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

Advances have been made with the methods of protection against low-flying air attack within the division. With the increased significance of obstacles, referred to above, great improvement has been achieved in the R.E. equipment dealing with bridging and demolitions.

There have of necessity been changes in the dress and equipment of the soldier.

\* \* \* \* \*

**T**O HANDLE efficiently modern forces of the character of those described above, staff work has to be of a high degree of excellence. Good technique, speed and accuracy, good inter-communication, fast transport (air or motor) and close liaison work are essential. This aspect of the problem has received adequate attention.

The modern commander, also, must be able to endure the increased speed and strain of modern war. The necessary alertness, anticipation of events and cool judgment of risks will only accompany thorough mental and physical fitness.

Modern military developments would be gravely handicapped without a close relationship with industry, and with the public. The new directorate of public relations should foster this relationship.

Finally, the lecturer discussed the "New Soldier" and his excellent qualities, and compared an enlightened discipline and psychology with "totalitarian" methods.

There is a large and important human element in all these new developments which cannot be neglected with impunity. In the end it is the soldier behind the weapon or vehicle who counts, his morale, physical fitness, character, intelligence, will power and resource. In these things the soldier of the British Empire has never failed us. It is up to us to see that by wise leadership, good training, arms and equipment he gets his chance.

|                                                                                                                   |                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>INSIST ON</b></p> <p><b><i>Crystal</i></b></p> <p><b>ICE CREAM</b></p> <p><i>"taste the difference"</i></p> | <p><i>Make the</i></p> <p><b>TASTE TEST</b></p> <p><b>TODAY</b></p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|

## Boys of the Old Brigade

*By The Editor*

---

WHEREVER two or three men are gathered together nowadays sooner or later the conversation turns to this:

"'Member the time when Jerry Arnold . . ."

"Yes, and Bill Little said he was . . ."

"Wonder what's become of them."

"Killed in the war I reckon."

"I guess so."

\* \* \* \* \*

BUT BLEEDER, of whom I write, was not killed in the war, for which probably the entire reason is that he was over age. The last time I saw him he had grown a white beard and I noticed he stooped a little and leaned a little heavily on his walking stick. Wherever he is, God rest him for a fine and gallant gentleman.

I got to know Bleeder first in the Royal North-West Mounted Police. Even then he had more than twenty years of service to his credit, most of the last ten years of which he had spent on the inner side of the barracks gate. His duties included that of fire marshal, in which capacity he was responsible for the working condition of the manual fire apparatus and the training of the fire "brigade" in their duties. But nothing ever burned, and one afternoon after ten years of self-incarceration, he ventured forth.

I met him at a downtown bar complaining that the civilian beer wasn't what they got in the sergeant's mess up at the post. When I asked him if he wasn't afraid the post would burn down while he was out he growled: "Let it burn. There's nothing to stop it. It's as dry as tinder. The hand pumps were out of date at the Riel Rebellion and they won't get me new ones. I've done my best to put life into the fire squad but what can you do with a crowd of scum like that?"

I had gathered at various times that the force wasn't what it had been when Bleeder joined. No, sir; it'd never be the same again. He didn't know why he stayed with it. At particularly melancholy moments he wondered why he'd ever joined. But I knew the answer to both; it was simply that he was one of those who get soldiering into their bones just as a sailor gets the salt of the sea air into his lungs and the newspaperman contracts his incurable malady when his finger's become stained with printer's ink.

Once on a time Bleeder had been a divinity student at Oxford but, tired of divinity, in addition to getting into trouble with the college authorities, he left during the night and the towers and spires of Oxford saw him no more. He took up the army as a career by

enlisting as a trooper in the Nth Dragoon Guards and 1880 found him in South Africa as a squadron sergeant-major. He seemed disappointed in me when I confessed that this was all before I was born. During that campaign he was taken prisoner by the Boers. He might have escaped, he told me, but his mare stumbled and spilled Bleeder to the Veldt as you might tip water from a pail. While the galloping patrol was roaring down upon him the mare scrambled to her feet and struck off up country, lightened of her not inconsiderable load.

Instinctively Bleeder reached for a weapon but sword and rifle were both on the saddle of the fugitive mare. He felt for his revolver but the holster had slipped around to the small of his back. He reached behind him with his left hand and over his shoulder with his right but the Boers closed in on him and in a flash a dozen of them had him trussed like a dressed fowl. A few nights later he crawled between the wheels of a laagered wagon, crept up behind the dreamy sentinel whom he laid out with a swift and unexpected uppercut and disappeared over the crest of a low ridge.

Shortly after Bleeder rejoined the Nth Dragoon Guards he was promoted to the command of a troop and a commission which, when the campaign was over he relinquished when he found that, whatever his soldierly qualifications were for war, his purse was not big enough for peace. So he went into retirement in a lodging house at Ramsgate, electing to take up residence there because the nearest regimental depot was at Canterbury, many miles away, and he believed that, seeing no soldiers save a few furlough-takers, he might be cured of his passion for the army. But a week later he was awakened by some condemned fool of a trumpeter blowing boots and saddles right under his gory window. I have tried to approximate Bleeder's incandescent words. Summoning the landlady, he angrily demanded the reason for the disturbance and learned that the volunteer artillery were in camp. The landlady, dear soul, could not understand how a gentleman who, on his own admission, would have slept peacefully—nay, willingly—in the heart of a boiler factory should be disturbed by what she called a bugle. But Bleeder could not be pacified. He paid her two weeks rent in advance and a five-pound note to boot which comforted her greatly for the loss of her favorite gentleman. And Bleeder boarded a train for—where was it? I've forgotten. Anyway, it was the regimental depot of the Nth Dragoon Guards where he enlisted as a trooper all over again.

The end of 1899 found him back in South Africa, fighting in the ranks of the old Nth Dragoon Guards, again as a squadron sergeant-major and still proclaiming with his old profuseness of blasphemy that the regiment wasn't what it used to be. After South Africa he returned to England and took his "ticket" from the Nth Dragoon Guards. Rather than run another risk, he shook the dust of the Mother Country from his feet and came to Canada. Not to the East nor the Pacific Coast nor even to Winnipeg where the

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

permanent garrisons would be a constant and probably irresistible lure, but to the mid-prairies did he go, not reckoning that he would find at Regina the depot of the Royal North-West Mounted Police.

You know the rest.

\* \* \* \* \*

THIS is the story of Bleeder's army and police career. I wish I could have told you it as Bleeder told me but I fear his talent for words will never be mine. Besides, my paraphrase of it saves a deal of expurgation.

There are probably some chapters of it which will never now be told for he was interrupted during the fifth pint by the appearance of a constable, a gray-haired veteran in stetson and stable jacket with the police mail bag slung across his shoulder.

"What is it, Buller?" Bleeder asked, sharply.

"It's about the fire, sergeant," Buller began.

"Fire? What fire?" Bleeder demanded.

"The fire at the post, sergeant, 'B' building was burned down this afternoon."

Buller had grown old in the Mounted Police and was almost due for pension. He might have been an inspector or a superintendent or an assistant commissioner had he not, in the early days of his service been sent up to the Arctic to arrest a homicidally maniac Eskimo. When, months later, a patrol of Buller's comrades rescued him somewhere beyond the sixty-fifth parallel both prisoner and escort were gibbering madmen. Buller, though his reason was at length restored to him, was fit for nothing more than light duty forever after.

Bleeder choked over a mouthful of beer.

"Fire," he spluttered. "How much damage?"

"Total loss, I guess, sergeant," said Buller nervously.

Bleeder thumped the bar with his mighty fist and cried, "Cripes! Just about the first day in ten years I've been away from the post! That'll teach 'em! Now they'll wish they'd got a new pump! Did they turn out the fire squad? Did the scarecrows know their drill? Don't talk back! Here! Where you going! Won't you fellows ever learn you can't fall out without permission from the senior on parade? Cripes! I'd like to know what the force is coming to! What you going to have?"

## Empire Service as Illustrated by the Work of the Royal Empire Society and Imperial Institute

*By Sir Harry Lindsay, K.C.I.E., C.B.E.*

---

I PROPOSE to talk to you this evening on one or two subjects which are rather near to my heart, and the trouble is that when a man begins talking about subjects in which he thinks he is particularly interested, he is inclined to get rather prolix. I shall have to keep within my time, and I shall warn you that I am going to try and divide my talk, this evening, into two parts—one more or less general, and one relating to the Imperial Institute; and one on the subject of India, and I will begin with a few very obvious remarks. You will forgive me if they are too obvious, but I hope to build up on them certain conclusions.

The British Empire occupies one-quarter of the total land surface of the globe, and accounts for one-quarter of the population of the world. So that, you see, we do not really occupy more space than we are entitled to. The total land surface of the globe is something like 56,000,000 square miles, and the British Empire accounts for 14,000,000 square miles. The total population of the globe is 2,000,000,000 and the British Empire accounts for 494,000,000, practically 500,000,000. The interesting thing is that out of this 494 millions of the British Empire, 350 millions are Indian.

On the basis of one-quarter of the population of the globe, we do one third of the total trade of the world. That means to say, that our experience of overseas trade, and our keenness on overseas trade, and our knowledge that overseas trade is vital to real human progress, after all merely means producing that for which we are most fitted, and exchanging it with the products of other nations. That is the basis of real human progress, and human civilization and international society.

It is no good trying to build a ring fence around yourself, and thinking that by being self-contained and self-centred you are contributing towards human happiness and progress. I think the British race as a whole is rather inclined to take these human responsibilities rather seriously, and I am sure you will agree with me that the criterion of successful human relationships is based on international trade. But, coincidentally with that, we are essentially a race of individualists. We believe in the individual; we believe that all progress comes from giving the individual the chance to express himself, a chance to develop himself first, I hope, and then to express

himself, and with the individual, that if he is given a sufficient opportunity he is able to throw out new ideas, and new ideals, which really make for all human progress.

\* \* \* \* \*

**Y**OU HAVE these two ideals in front of you—the ideal that the state is everything, and the citizen is almost nothing. That is the first ideal. That is the ideal which you see so prevalent in totalitarian states; that the state is everything, and the citizen exists merely in order to serve the State. And you have the other ideal which is entirely opposite, namely, that the individual is the unit, and the individual is an end in himself, and not merely a means to an end. After all, when you consider it, there are any number of units. There is the family, there is the society, the neighborhood, the village or town, the province and the state, the empire, the league and ultimately humanity. What is going to be the unit that counts? We believe, and we always have believed, that the individual is the true unit; that as you go up that ascending scale, you come to a conglomeration of units. For example, when you get to the state, your outlines have become blurred; you are not dealing with a true unit; you are dealing with a conglomeration of units. Really all progress, the building up of the British Empire itself, has been the work of a succession of units of individuals.

It is a highly individualistic system which has been built up in the British Empire, and is being built up by that highest type of individual: namely, the individual with the highest social sense, the individual who is best able to co-operate with his fellows, and who knows that only in co-operation can one ever achieve anything in this world. I am encouraging questions afterwards, and, therefore, criticism. But I hope you will agree with me that the British Empire is purely individualistic in character. It is very much easier to build up an Empire than to keep it running. It is very much easier to build up a fortune than to spend it wisely and considerately. Therefore, while we all do not recognize the value and worth of the individual, we must, as I see it, recognize that the highest type is the individual with the greatest social and community sense, who is best able to work in with his fellows.

\* \* \* \* \*

**A**NOTHER question which we have every right to ask ourselves is just this: what is it, after all, that holds the Empire together?

There are many possible answers. It certainly is not language. I remember that, within a year or two of my actually joining the Service in India, I was put in charge of my first subdivision. I was very pleased with myself. I was put in charge of a subdivision with one million inhabitants, living at the rate of nine-hundred to the square mile, in a purely rural area. There was not a town in

the whole subdivision, but you could not stand in any place in that subdivision without seeing round you five or six villages. There was not a square yard that was not cultivated, and, in fact, you knew that there was something that was holding that subdivision together. It was not my poor self with my poor experience, but just the British Raj, and the character and the determination and the good-will of the British Raj.

One had in those days responsibility for a great number of activities throughout one's subdivision—responsibility for public works, responsibility for education, responsibility for forestry, responsibility for the police, and responsibility for revenue and finance. I remember, on a tour of inspection, I came across one of the little village schools run by the village school master, even the school master could not talk English, and we all talked in the vernacular. He said, "All the children talk the vernacular, but there is one boy who can talk English and his parents know English, and I should like to show you a specimen of his work." I said I would be delighted to see it. This was a boy's essay on the horse, and it began with two very striking sentences, which I must recite. "The horse is a noble animal, but when he is angry, he will not do so," but the second sentence explained that "the horse is dangerous at both ends, and very uncomfortable in the middle."

I only quote that story to show you that it is not the English language which holds the Empire together. It is not language, it is not race—we are of all sorts and kinds of races. I suppose there are as many races and religions in the British Empire as there are in the world, as a whole. What is it then?

Well, of course, you will at once answer me by saying it is the Crown, and I will admit it is the Crown, but I hope you will not think of the Crown, in this context, as a mere administrative convenience. The Crown holds us together, and, after all, he is as much your King in Canada as he is our King in the United Kingdom, for we are all sovereign states. But the Crown is not merely an administrative convenience, as I have said, holding Canada together, as it holds the United Kingdom together. The Crown is essentially representative to us of those traditions which built us up, and which hold us together. I am sure you will agree with me in that. The Crown stands to us, as I said, for certain traditions. The word tradition has sometimes an unfortunate connotation; it means a reference to things of the past, which have had their day. But do not forget that tradition really means the best of the old, the best which has survived, and it is that which the Crown represents to us.

The Crown represents to us, the choicest of the ideals which built up the British Empire, and which still holds us together. I was talking on this subject the other day to an English audience, and encouraging questions, and, after my talk, a young woman got up at the back of the audience, and said: "You know you have been talking rather nonsense. There is nothing spiritual that holds the



Empire together. There is only one thing that holds the Empire together and that is trade, not spiritual things at all." Of course, you know, young women, as somebody said to me the other day, have to be very level headed these days, otherwise they could not keep their hats on straight. This young woman was certainly extremely level headed, and I had to think very rapidly as to what my answer was to be, and I hope that you will agree that my answer was right. Of course, it is trade that holds the Empire together but it is trade of a particular kind. It is trade of a kind in which you know you are going to get a square deal from the other man. It is trade with a basis of confidence on both sides. It is trade which rests on a basis of honesty and fair dealing, and that brings you back to the traditions on which the Empire was founded, and the traditions by which it is held together. And in fact, I cannot think of anything more spiritual than honest dealing or fairmindedness—the capacity to put yourself into the shoes of the other fellow, to think his thoughts, and to try and give him a fair deal. The spiritual can only reveal itself through material things, and if there is nothing more material than trade, yet surely honest trade is itself essentially spiritual.

\* \* \* \* \*

THAT leads me to one more point. I think we always feel the same way about these matters, although we do not always express them. It is always a good thing when your mind become blunt, as it is bound to do, blunted by contact with all sorts of material things that turn up in one's ordinary daily life; you must have a little corner of your own to which to retire, where you take your mind to be whetted on the whet-stone of the spiritual—sharpened again, so that you can deal with the problems of everyday life—sharpened and rejuvenated.

I have been giving this talk on the Empire with malice aforethought, because we have before our minds, very clearly and closely

|                          |                                                  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| REAL ESTATE<br>INSURANCE | J. W. LITTLETON                                  |
| Telephone<br>M 3192      |                                                  |
| H. MELVIN                | MELVIN AND COMPANY                               |
|                          | DOMINION BANK BUILDING                           |
|                          | CALGARY, ALBERTA                                 |
|                          | Loans<br>Estates Managed<br>Automobiles Financed |

at the present time, certain other ideals in which we do not ourselves believe. We have before our minds a vision of States which do not believe as we do—of States which believe that the spiritual is not the unit, but the State is the unit, and that the State must be served by the individual; whereas we believe, that it is the State which should serve the individual. That, I think, is essential to a clear understanding of the things for which we must ultimately be prepared to fight—not in the sense of trying to persuade the other fellow to change his point of view—it is not our job to do that—but we must hold very clearly, I think, the convictions which built up the Empire and which keep us together, and one of these certainly is that the State should serve the citizen, rather than the citizen the State. The citizen is the true unit and not the State.

Somebody described rather widely I think, the other day, these other States as States where everything which is not forbidden is compulsory. We do not believe in that. We believe in a State to which the citizen renders his obedience, voluntarily and willingly. We rather believe in the attitude of the man who says: "Bother these Governments! I wish they would leave me alone to get on with my job." That was the spirit in which the Empire was built up. Leave me to get on with my job. But that is not the attitude of the other States—they won't leave the individual to get on with his job. I do believe that, in the British Empire, everything depends on letting the individual—to their greatest possible number—get on with his job quickly, because if he is given that amount of liberty, you must trust him. It is quite true that, in many cases, liberty degenerates into license; but on the whole, if the individual is allowed and trusted to get on with his job he will usually produce something of some value, something of value to the community as a whole, and on that basis all true human progress must depend.

So we find ourselves now faced with considerable difficulties—we find ourselves perhaps almost in a position of having climbed down, but there is one point on which I do not think we will climb down—that, on whatever action Germany takes, it must not be taken by unconstitutional means. That, I think, is the principle on which neither Mr. Chamberlain nor his Government as a whole are likely to give way. It may have to come to a plebiscite, but the plebiscite, after all, is constitutional, and it certainly is a method which avoids the transgression of boundaries. It avoids armed force. It is a very difficult problem which is facing the Government at the present moment in England, and I cannot help feeling that all through British Governments have been wise in their decision to advocate methods which make for time—time—time—time. Time is the great healer and solver of disputes and difficulties, and, if we can only get Time on our side, we shall help to do away with all those thoughtless activities which land the whole human race sometimes in war.

\* \* \* \* \*

WITH that introduction, I should like to go on to tell you a little about our work at the Imperial Institute, with, as preface, some account of the Empire Marketing Board, of which I think most of you will have heard. The Empire Marketing Board did a very great work for the Empire. It is a pity that it ever had to come to an end. Its functions were two-fold. First, to try and help the primary producer, who, I think you will all admit, is the person suffering most under the present economic regime—for the primary producer is the man who most needs to be helped by the application of science to his problems. That was the first function of the Empire Marketing Board. The second function was the art of educating the rising generation in the United Kingdom in its Empire responsibilities—to bring home to the rising generation what the Empire really means, and especially to those elementary and primary schools throughout the United Kingdom, where perhaps the story of the Empire is told with most advantage. I do not mean so much the public schools, or the private schools, as the elementary schools, and that was one of the functions of the Empire Marketing Board. It was to get that story across.

I remember, in particular, those posters, which many of you have seen, which the Empire Marketing Board put out, and which were circulated through the United Kingdom, and throughout the Empire as well. They were extraordinarily well designed. They drew attention to the products of the overseas Empire, and so brought home the lesson of Empire production. There was one poster which I would remind you of, which was rather outstanding in its lesson on the Empire, and on the spirit which helped build up the Empire. These posters were always sent out in pairs, and this particular pair of posters showed on one side the collection of all the heroes who had built up the Empire. It showed them all collected together—the Drakes, the Raleighs, the Wolfes, the Vancouvers and so on. They were all collected in one group—rather a striking group, and underneath was written: "Now Praise We Famous Men." On the other poster was a picture of the construction of a house, and there were the stone masons at work, the carpenters at work, and the plumbers at work, putting this house together, and underneath was written: "And Some There Be Of Whom There Is No Memorial." That pair of posters I think gets very deep into the heart of that reconciliation of the great and the small which makes for human fellowship, and therefore human progress.

We do not quite rise to such heights as that at the Imperial Institute, but we do try to carry on those two great traditions—on the one side the application of science to the economic development of the Empire; and on the other side the telling to the rising generation the story of the Empire. I am not going to bother you with the scientific side—I am not a scientist myself. There have been three directors of the Imperial Institute. The first was a scientist—the second was a soldier, a very fine fellow—and the third was a mere civil servant like myself. As you know, some hard things are said about civil servants. The story is that the civil servant is

like the fountains in Trafalgar Square—he plays from 10 to 4. The other equally unkind one is that the civil servant, contrary to all the laws of nature, rises by dint of his own specific gravity. They have not tried a diplomat yet. On that, I heard the Norwegian ambassador the other day, in a public speech in London, tell this rather jolly conundrum. The diplomat, as you know, when he says 'yes', means "perhaps." When he says 'perhaps' he means 'no' but if he says 'no' he is no diplomat. How different is the diplomat from the lady who, when she says 'no' means 'perhaps' and when she says 'perhaps' means 'yes', but if she says 'yes' she is no lady.

\* \* \* \* \*

LET ME return to the Imperial Institute. As I say, we try to combine science and art. I have always thought—I have always felt that the art side is rather a jolly side of life. Science, you see, is the nation at work, and art is the nation at play, and the greatest, I suppose, of all the arts is the art of education, and the most successful teacher is one who has the capacity for play, because only so can he get his lessons across. On the art side—that educational side—of our work at the Imperial Institute, it will interest you to know that we have a series of Exhibition Galleries—great long galleries which run right around the Imperial Institute, and one whole Gallery is given up to Canada. One of my jobs out here is to approach the provincial and Dominion governments, and persuade them that we might make a better show of that Canadian Court if we had the latest and most up-to-date maps and exhibits of different kinds.

We like to tell stories—you see the story is the best means of telling the lesson that we try to get across all the time. Do not forget that we concentrate on the whole Empire—we are responsible to the whole Empire and responsible to you as citizens of Canada, and responsible to the citizens of Australia and South Africa. We are responsible to all citizens of the Empire to tell your story for you to the rising generation in the United Kingdom. We get over half a million of the general public through our Galleries every year, and I suppose seventy-five or eighty per cent. consists of school children. We try to tell the stories in as attractive a way as possible. We tell the story of wheat—from the field where it is grown in the prairie provinces right through to the flour, and all the different stages in modern mechanical development which have made the production of the finest flour possible. Sometimes we try to be funny. For example, our caption for the wool story is: "How many socks does the sheep wear?" The answer shows that the average fleece from the average sheep is about seven pounds in weight, when it is scoured it comes down to about four and one-half pounds, the tops weigh about three and three-quarters pound, the yarn about three and one-half pounds, and, at the end, your mother can knit twenty-six pairs of socks out of the wool that comes from one sheep's back. You can carry away the story of what happens to the wool, especially if you can finish up with some exhibit of domestic interest

which the child's mind fixes on at once and says to itself: "A pair of socks." The interest is the wool, not the pair of socks, and we want the child to remember where that wool comes from, and so to combine the lesson of geography with the lesson of Empire commerce, and that is where we co-operate with the school teachers in the United Kingdom, in telling the story of the overseas Empire to our school children and visitors.

\* \* \* \* \*

FINALLY, we have our Empire Marketing Library, by which we have inherited from the Empire Marketing Board a collection of 800 films describing the Empire. In four years, we have built up that collection, after repairing all wastage, into 1,600 reels. We have over 3,000 schools and societies which borrow our films, and they were shown to audiences aggregating over five million souls last year, of whom nearly one and one-half million saw Canadian films, so you can see we are really doing our work, and I am not misleading you when I say that I am here to give you an account of my work as Director of the Imperial Institute. A boy once said to me, and I think it is extremely wise—perhaps too wise for a boy: 'When a man is wrapped up in himself, he makes a very small parcel.' That is very true. It is only when you begin to throw your mind outwards—when you begin to interest yourself in other people's concerns, that your education really begins, and, if you put yourself in the place of the child in an elementary school you should begin by asking the child to take interest in the countries overseas. That is the sort of spirit that we want inculcated in the school children of the United Kingdom.



Established in 1903

**METALS Limited**

Wholesale  
**HARDWARE, PLUMBING &  
HEATING SUPPLIES**

HEAD OFFICE - CALGARY  
Northern Branch - Edmonton  
B. C. Branch - Vancouver

**A. B. CUSHING MILLS**

Limited

**LUMBER - SHINGLES  
WALL BOARDS  
INSULATION  
MILLWORK**

**W4648 - Phones - M4648**

## Daniel O'Connell

*Hon. Mr. Justice Ewing*

---

LET ME first acknowledge the honour which you have done me in asking me to speak to this Institute. You will, of course, recognize that, in asking anyone who belongs to my particular calling to talk to you, you seriously limit the subject of discussion. However, it is fitting and proper tonight, on this, Ireland's greatest day and, incidentally, the most widely celebrated national festival in the world outside of Christmas, that I should talk to you for a little while upon an Irish subject.

I have no doubt that there are a goodly number of Irishmen here tonight. Indeed, it would scarcely be possible to get a gathering of this size without having a considerable number of Irishmen among them. To those of you who are not Irish may I make this request: that for the time being you forget those traits of Irish character which you may think are not admirable and remember only those which are great and good and true. Will you settle down as comfortably as you can and for the space of, say, an hour let us all be Irishmen tonight.

Now, in the long ago when I was young, two names caught my fancy and fired my youthful imagination. A somewhat closer study in the years that have since intervened has only served to widen and deepen my interest in and my admiration for these two great historical characters. One was Abraham Lincoln, the martyred president of the American republic; the other was the man concerning whom I will talk to you for a little time tonight.

Look at the map of Ireland, which I am sure you all hold in your imagination and, if you do not not, you might just remember the physiognomy of one of your Irish friends. If you look at the extreme southwest corner of that map you will see the good old county of Kerry, and if you look at the extreme southwest corner of Kerry where the jagged peninsulas stretch out tongue-like to meet the inrolling Atlantic, you will see a country which is locally known as the O'Connell country. It is a country of forest, lake and trees, of bold promontory and deeply indented bay, of rugged mountain and peaceful valley, of scenic grandeur and romantic beauty. In this country there lived toward the beginning of the 18th Century an old man named Daniel O'Connell. He had 21 sons. Race suicide had not then fastened its fangs on the nation's vitals. One of the younger of these sons was named Morgan. Morgan was respectable young man with not much ability but everyone liked him. He had one failing, not uncommon in his day nor in ours, of failing at everything he



## BAKERY PRODUCTS

A complete line of  
**BREAD - ROLLS - CAKES**  
for every occasion

Manufactured by  
**Canadian Bakeries**  
LIMITED

"Masters of the Oven"

## Sound and Seasoned LUMBER

Best quality, proper storage, and handling. Perfect machining.

Many profitable services available to the prospective builder. Send us your enquiries.

## REVELSTOKE Sawmill Co. Limited

Stockyards - East Calgary  
E 5651

FRANK H. PEARCE, MANAGER

## AUTOMATIC GAS EQUIPMENT



*makes your home  
headquarters for*

- COMFORT
- CONVENIENCE
- CLEANLINESS
- ECONOMY

THE  
Canadian Western  
Natural Gas, Light,  
Heat & Power Co.  
LIMITED

undertook. He tried farming and failed at that. Then he tried stock raising and failed at that. He started a tannery and failed at that and then he started in smuggling. I do not want you to think for a moment that any moral reproach attached to that calling. It was not even called smuggling; it was called free trade and those who carried it on were called free traders. Morgan married Kate O'Mullane, a lady somewhat widely known in those parts for her many graces of mind and heart, and on the 16th of August, 1775, while she was absent on a visit, travelling by post chaise, she was taken suddenly ill and retired to a ferryman's hut. In that rude sod-covered cabin she brought into this world her great son, little dreaming as she pressed the tender babe to her bosom that the day was not far distant when at the mention of his name every Irish heart would thrill with pride; little dreaming that he was destined to fill a place in the history of his native country unequalled since the ancient of days of Bryan Brou.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE FIRST ten years of his life was spent much in the manner of every other peasant child in that vicinity, but we gather from contemporary writings something of his training. As he sat around by the blazing turf fire in the long winter evenings, listening, when the neighbours gathered in, to the stories, the legends and the folk-lore in which that wild country abounded, his boyish mind was drinking in that profound knowledge of Irish character which enabled him to be not only the peerless cross-examiner of the Irish bar but eminently fitted him to be the great tribune of the Irish people.

His uncle, who took some responsibility for his education, decided to send him to France which, as you know, was at that time in the throes immediately preceding the Revolution. He went to a French college and, as a result of his sojourn in France, there was firmly planted in his mind three truths. I give them to you for what you consider them worth. The first was the advantage of religion in a nation's life—in that he firmly believed. The next was the advantage of a monarchy as a system of Government—in that too he firmly believed. During his sojourn there he saw a great deal of bloodshed and then and there he conceived a horror of the shedding of blood. This he never forgot and when, in later years, he held the destinies of Ireland in the hollow of his hand and the country was aflame with rebellion, he had to tell them again and again that no constitutional change was worth a drop of Irish blood.

At first it was thought that he should go to the Church but later his uncle's desire prevailed and he decided to enter law. At that time it was a relatively easy thing to do. All he had to do was to keep so many terms reading with a barrister and to attend to so many dinners in the Hall. He attended the necessary number of terms and ate the required legs of mutton and was admitted to the bar in 1798.

\* \* \* \* \*



THOSE of you who know your history will remember that in that year Ireland broke out in bloody rebellion. It was put down with ruthless slaughter. Pitt, who had long been considering a change, decided upon the union of the two countries. Looking back one may wonder now whether the union which took place in 1801 contributed to the benefit of the Irish people or whether it contributed to the strength and stability of the Empire. That may well be a subject of debate, but there can be no doubt and no debate about the question as to how the union was brought about. It was brought about by means of the grossest corruption. Eighty-five pocket boroughs were bought at £15,000 apiece. Twenty-eight peerages were granted. Baronetcies, judgeships, preferments without number were handed down. Then the Bill came up in the Irish Parliament and the great debate came on. Richard Lalor Sheil delivered his great oration against it; Grattan spoke with great vigor and power against it but, as you can well understand, the die was cast and the result was not in doubt. But the debate was not without its Irish characteristics. One honourable member who was speaking of the advantages that would accrue to Ireland from the union said: "It will convert the barren hills of Ireland into fruitful valleys." Another honourable member, in denouncing those who had accepted bribes, said: "Why, if you put the honourable members on an uninhabited island in the South Seas they would not be there twenty-four hours until they had their hands in the pockets of the naked savages."

By a vote of a 161 to 120 the Irish Parliament voted its own extinction and the two Parliaments were legally and officially united on the 1st day of January, 1801. On that day the Royal Standard with the Irish harp quartered on the corner floated over Dublin Castle, the artillery thundered in Phoenix Park, the bells of St. Patrick's Cathedral pealed merrily all day long. O'Connell, who had just been admitted as a young man to the Irish bar, was displeased and said: "I was mad when I heard the bells of St. Patrick's Cathedral pealing out as though it were a great national festival. I then and there vowed that the union would not last if I could help it."

For the first few years after his admission to the bar he devoted himself exclusively to the practice of his profession. It might be interesting to note, if there are any lawyers present, and those of you who are not lawyers will see a singular parallel between his case and the case of lawyers of the present day. In the first year of his practice he earned \$15, in the second year he earned \$300 and in the third year he earned \$2,000, and from that time on his professional fees increased rapidly.

After a few years of his professional practice there came to O'Connell what sometimes comes to many young lawyers, namely, the Great Opportunity. There was in Dublin at that time a paper known as The Dublin Post of which one John McGee was the editor. John McGee, a Presbyterian Irishman, was strongly opposed to English rule in Ireland and his paper was devoted to opposing English rule. The then Lord Lieutenant was about to leave. As you know,

the Lord Lieutenant is the active head of the Government of Ireland and may therefore be considered a proper subject of criticism. In Ireland, as everywhere, every man in public life should be subject to fair criticism. The Duke of Richmond was leaving—and you know that the only popularity that an Irish Lord Lieutenant ever achieved was when he was leaving and this resulted in tumultuous applause. When the Duke of Richmond left The Dublin Post said this about him: "Richmond was no better than the worst of his predecessors,—they insulted, they oppressed, they deceived. The profligate Westmoreland, the cold-hearted and cruel Camden, the artful and treacherous Cornwallis left Ireland more depressed than they found it. They augmented the power of the Government in military and civil branches and uniformly employed them against the well-being of the people." That was a libel. For that McGee was arrested and charged with criminal libel. He decided to employ a rising young counsel in Dublin named Daniel O'Connell to defend him. It was a noteworthy trial which excited tremendous interest. His address to the jury is one of the great masterpieces of Irish literature:

So he went on for four hours—vehement, defiant, and daring to the last—justifying every sentence of the libel, ridiculing the charge, scornful, satirical, abusive, his whole frame quivering with antagonism and hate which consumed him; holding the entire assembly fascinated by the elemental forces displayed in this amazing and unexampled forensic effort. The Court was hushed in profound and solemn stillness. There were no delighted cheers of approval, no angry cries of dissent. It was only the varied expressions on the faces of the audience—the triumphant looks of the supporters of the great advocate, the pained and lowering glances of his opponents—that told of the effect of the orator's burning periods.

"If you be sincere—if you have consciences, if your oath can control your prejudices—then Mr. McGee confidently expects an acquittal. If amongst you there be cherished one ray of pure religion, if amongst you there glow a single spark of liberty, if I have alarmed the passion of religious liberty or aroused the spirit of political freedom in one breast amongst you, Mr. McGee is safe and his country is served. But if there be none, if you be slaves and hypocrites, he will await your verdict and despise it."

\* \* \* \* \*

THE JURY promptly brought in a verdict of guilty and McGee was sentenced to two years imprisonment and fined \$2,500. All Ireland was teeming with excitement and the press was loud in its admiration of O'Connell's great defence. Although his client was found guilty by a Protestant jury, O'Connell's speech was printed in pamphlet form and distributed all over Ireland. It was translated into French and distributed on the Continent.

From then on O'Connell was the great champion of the Irish people and their affection for him increased as the years went by.

Shortly after this there occurred a very unfortunate event in his life. There was a man in Dublin called D'Esterre. He was a

member of the Dublin Corporation which is the same as the City Council here. O'Connell in a public speech had spoken of the Corporation as a "beggarly corporation" referring, of course, only to the Corporation. D'Esterre, who was himself on the verge of bankruptcy, pretended to believe that the remark was directed at himself. He was a noted duellist and had already killed three men in duels. He challenged O'Connell to a duel. O'Connell was not a duellist and, indeed, hated it but such was the spirit of the times that if a man refused to fight he would be branded as a public coward. O'Connell agreed to fight and the men met outside of Dublin. The preliminaries were arranged and the men took their appointed places. O'Connell, who was no shot at all, merely fired his pistol in the direction of D'Esterre. Strangely enough the bullet struck D'Esterre in the groin and as he was falling to the ground he fired at O'Connell, but the ball deflected his shot and the bullet struck at the ground at O'Connell's feet. A physician examined D'Esterre and thought he would recover, but blood poisoning set in and he died in three weeks.

O'Connell was heart-broken. He went to Madame D'Esterre and offered to divide his income for the rest of his life with her. He undertook the education of one of her daughters and attended strictly to the matter. To the end of Madame D'Esterre's life, O'Connell looked after her interests. Long years afterwards, when he was on his way to Cork to appear on several important cases, a man on horseback caught up to him and told him that the widow D'Esterre was in difficulty and wished to see him. O'Connell threw up his briefs and returned his retaining fees and hastened back to the assistance of the widow D'Esterre. To the end of his days he always wore his right hand gloved when taking communion in Church. When asked about it he said sadly: "It has taken the life of a fellow creature and I will never bare it in the presence of my Redeemer."

\* \* \* \* \*

THE TIME had now arrived for O'Connell to launch his great campaign for Catholic emancipation. I suppose everyone knows what that is. Catholics were not excluded from the House of Commons as Catholics, but every member of the House of Commons before taking a seat had to take an oath. I will not read this oath to you for it is not now perhaps very pleasant reading, but it was an oath against the sacrifice of the Mass and against the invocation of the Virgin Mary. No good Catholic could take that oath and therefore no good Catholic could become a member of the House of Commons. This being settled, no Roman Catholic ever offered himself as a candidate for the House of Commons.

Then a curious thing happened. There occurred a vacancy in the County of Clare. Mr. Vesey Fitzgerald was taken into the Duke of Wellington's cabinet and the rule was then, as now, that when a member takes a cabinet position he has to go back for re-election. Mr. Vesey Fitzgerald went back for re-election to the County of Clare. The people were very hostile, not particularly

to Fitzgerald, and although Irish landlords were very unpopular, Mr. Vesey Fitzgerald was considered by the people one of the best Irish land owners. However, people wanted to oppose the Government even if there was no hope in trying to defeat Mr. Vesey Fitzgerald. The committee went to O'Connell and asked him to run. O'Connell ridiculed the suggestion and pointed out its impossibility. However, as he thought it over, the boldness of the idea appealed to him. He said he would run. The news spread like wildfire throughout the country. Dublin was seething with excitement. O'Connell took a little time to close up his business in Dublin and then set out for Clare. Times were different then. In a cause in which they believed men were willing to give not merely their money but their time to assist in that cause. O'Connell set out for Clare with a retinue a mile long—men on horseback and in all manner of conveyances—and as the sun was setting behind the Western hills they crossed the Shannon and entered the county of Clare.

Seldom, I suppose, has a public man received a more royal welcome. Bonfires blazed on every hill. From every cabin window the humble rush-light beamed its kindly welcome and as they passed along there came, as voices of the night, "God bless Counsellor O'Connell." They reached Ennis about midnight, which was the capital of the county, and it was said that no eye in Ennis closed that night. In the light of blazing tar barrels O'Connell addressed the assembled multitude. "They say I am not qualified to be your representative. I say I am qualified to be your representative. It is true that I will never stain my soul with such an oath. I will leave that to my honourable opponent Mr. Vesey Fitzgerald who has sworn that foul oath many times and now asks your votes in order that he may swear it again."

At the beginning of the campaign O'Connell laid down two restrictions; he directed that no supporter of his must resent an insult before election day and no man must drink liquor before election day. Those of you who know how prone the Irish character is to do both will perhaps give attention to the fact that during that time there was not a single arrest for a breach of the peace and only one man was arrested for being drunk and he turned out to be an English groom

You will recall of course that these were the days of the forty shilling franchise. Only those occupying freehold of an annual value of forty shillings were permitted to vote and those were the days of open voting. You can readily understand the control which the landlord exercised over his tenants. You will realize that it lay in the power of the landlord to turn the tenant out from the house in which he was born and in which his fathers and forefathers had lived and died to become houseless and homeless wanderers, and, realizing this, you will gather some idea of the enormous power of the Irish landlords. But O'Connell kept up the fight. At every meeting he read the oath and denounced it "Electors of Clare, you must choose between Mr. Vesey Fitzgerald, who has sworn that

blasphemous oath full twenty times, and me who would be torn limb from limb rather than swear it."

Against the landlords was the call of O'Connell. It was not only the call of O'Connell; it was the call of the people; it was the call of their race; it was the call of their religion; it was the call of God. It was too much and regardless of their own security they voted for O'Connell and he was elected by a large majority.

There was great consternation in England. Sir Robert Peel, Leader of the House of Commons, said: "It makes no difference and nothing will happen. He will present himself at the bar of the House to take the oath. It will be tendered to him and as he cannot take it he will retire." But both in Ireland and in England everyone wondered what would happen. Then the extraordinary thing happened. Sir Robert Peel, one of the greatest, I suppose, of British statesmen, was a man whose mind was sufficiently large to change and who a few years later was destined to crown a life of change after having opposed all his life the repeal of the Corn Laws, turned suddenly around and himself introduced a Bill to abolish the Corn Laws and stepped down and out from public life. Sir Robert Peel, it is said, without consulting any of his colleagues, suddenly introduced the Emancipation Act. It was carried through Parliament and O'Connell took his seat as a member for Clare.

\* \* \* \* \*

**TO MEMBERS OF THE ALBERTA MILITARY  
INSTITUTE**

Members of the Institute are indebted to the various firms who have purchased advertising space in this Journal and thereby made its publication possible.

IF EACH MEMBER WILL ENDEAVOUR TO EXTEND HIS PATRONAGE, IN WHOLE OR IN PART, DURING THIS YEAR, TO THOSE FIRMS ADVERTISING AND MENTION THE INSTITUTE WHEN SO DOING, THE VALUE OF THE JOURNAL AS AN ADVERTISING MEDIUM WILL BE ESTABLISHED.

The Institute earnestly solicits your support for those firms who have used this Journal as an advertising medium.

O'CONNELL was now committed to public life. Speaking of this period, at a later date, he said: "Then I threw away my profession: I gave its emoluments to the winds: I closed the vista of its honours and its dignities: I embraced the cause of my country and, come weal or come woe, I have made a choice which I have never repented nor shall ever repine."

I have not time to trace tonight his parliamentary struggles in the British House of Commons, of his union with the Whigs, of his subsequent quarrel with the Whigs believing, as he did, that the Whigs had given him pledges as to the repeal of the union. It may not be worth while to repeat a few well known incidents in his parliamentary life. There occurred his famous contest with Disraeli which most of you probably know. Years before when Disraeli was contesting the constituency of Wycombe there was quite a large Irish vote in the constituency and Disraeli sent for O'Connell to come and help him. O'Connell could not go but he sent a letter which was read throughout the constituency and which undoubtedly did much good to Disraeli's campaign. Later O'Connell and Disraeli became estranged, as men in public life often do. Then one day a member had scornfully referred to Disraeli as a Jew. Proudly Disraeli replied: "Yes, I am a Jew. When the honourable member's ancestors were naked and painted savages mine were priests in the temple." In the same speech, however, Disraeli, with that ready use of abusive language for which he was famous, referred to O'Connell as an "incendiary" and later as a "traitor." The next day in reply O'Connell broke out in savage fury: "This man has the audacity to call me an incendiary. If I am an incendiary now I was an incendiary in 1832 when he employed me and if I was an incendiary then he was doubly so for having employed me. Then he calls me a traitor. My answer to that is that he is a liar. He is a liar in words as well as in deeds, his life is a living lie. He even mistakes his ancestry. Unless I mistake not he is the lineal descendant, the true heir-at-law of that blasphemous thief who died impenitent upon the cross and whose name, as I verily believe, was Disraeli." Disraeli shouted: "I will not be insulted by this yahoo with impunity." He then challenged O'Connell to a duel but O'Connell, owing to his solemn pledge never to fight another duel, refused.

One wonders what would have happened if they had fought a duel. The future Prime Minister of Britain might never have occupied the Prime Minister's chair or the life of O'Connell might have ended, but I am rather inclined to think that both would have missed.

\* \* \* \* \*

ANOTHER incident should be mentioned. While O'Connell was in the House of Commons the Bill for the Abolition of Slavery came up. It was contested with a bitterness that we can hardly appreciate in this day and generation. The West India Planters were very powerful. Apart from the members against abolition

generally the planters had 42 members who were interested in the trade and who could be absolutely depended upon. A committee went to O'Connell and made this proposition: If you will see that the Irish members vote as a body against abolition we give you now our solemn pledge that in the future all matters affecting Ireland our contingent of 42 members will vote as you direct. The temptation was very great. O'Connell had no particular interest in slavery, it did not affect Ireland in the slightest degree. On all Irish questions the vote in the House of Commons was very close and the votes of the 42 pro-slavery members might enable him to carry through the House of Commons measures which were of great advantage to Ireland. O'Connell listened to the delegation until they were through then, with a quietness remarkable in him, he said: "Gentlemen, God knows I speak for the poorest people the sun shines on, but may my right hand forget its cunning and my tongue cling to the roof of my mouth if even for an hour I forget the negro."

May I relate one other incident indicating O'Connell's never-failing humour. A reporter of the Times was sent to the House of Commons to report O'Connell's speech. The speech was reported in The Times the next day, The Times being bitterly opposed to O'Connell. O'Connell found to his surprise next day that the reported speech was not the speech he made at all; it did not report the things he said and reported many things which he did not say ... O'Connell sent a complaint to The Times. Apparently The Times called in the reporter and discovered that O'Connell was right. The reporter was then instructed that unless he made his peace with O'Connell he would be discharged. The reporter went to O'Connell and told him this story: The day before the speech his child was sick and he was up all night. He was not in a fit condition to report and when the speech was over he put his notes in his outside coat pocket. On his way home he encountered a very heavy rainstorm and when he took his notes out he found they were so wet as to be not decipherable. O'Connell, with that generosity which all you who are Irish know, assured the reporter that it was all right and he could go back to his employer. But he added: "Still, you know, that was the most remarkable rainstorm I ever heard of because it not only washed out the speech which I made but it washed in a speech which I did not make at all."

\* \* \* \* \*

**W**HENEVER O'Connell spoke in the House of Commons the galleries were always crowded. Wherever he spoke throughout the country great crowds gathered. His fame spread all over Europe, and that in a somewhat peculiar way. Those of you who know the contemporary history of Europe during the years immediately preceding the general Revolution of the late 'forties of the last century know the conditions that then prevailed. Poverty, ignorance and oppression, that terrible trinity, were everywhere present. Despair seemed to have numbed the heart strings of the people and the lamp of hope was burning low. Then there came

news, not in the written form, for of course they couldn't read, but in that peculiar way in which news sometimes travels from lip to lip—news that in that far Western island there had arisen a great and stalwart man whose powerful arm struck off the shackles of human slavery, who flung defiance in the teeth of wealth and power and who despite kings, princes and potentates, despite rescripts and courts and armies strode the land holding high the torch of human freedom. And so it was that in many lands by the bleak shores of the Baltic, by the Blue Danube and the Sunny Adriatic, in peasant huts, in many tongues, the muttered name of the Irish patriot mingled with their evening prayers.

O'Connell was now at the meridian of his splendid power and he decided, after much consideration, to launch the cause of repeal. "My struggle has begun and it will end only in death or repeal. The year 1845 must and shall be the repeal year." It was decided to form a repeal association. The curious thing about that is that for the first few months only a few hundred members joined and even those came in very slowly. Then the membership began to grow, names began to roll in by the hundreds and then by the thousands and then by tens of thousands until finally the association had enrolled as members between one and a half million and two million people. All Ireland was aflame but O'Connell held them in supreme control.

When the spring opened up they decided to hold a number of open air meetings which have passed into history as the "Monster Meetings." One meeting was held at Mullaghmast at which one hundred and fifty thousand people were there. Several meetings were held at which from one hundred to three hundred thousand people were present. At a meeting at Mallow four hundred thousand people were present. Then it was decided to hold a meeting that would eclipse all previous meetings—a meeting of all Ireland. Where should such a meeting be held? The committee met and considered the question. After all, there was only one place, rich in historic memory, the crowning place of the ancient Irish kings, the place where St. Patrick converted the heathen Irish chieftains to the doctrine of the Trinity by plucking the shamrock and pointing to its trefoil leaf drawing sustenance from a single stem. Tara was preeminently the place for such a meeting. The day was set and the call went forth. On the day preceding the date of the meeting all roads leading to Tara were blocked with the oncoming throng, on foot, on horseback, in jaunting car, in all manner of conveyances they came. All through the night bonfires blazed as the crowds continued to arrive and when that beautiful summer morning dawned Tara's plain was black with human beings. The London Times estimated the number present at the meeting at one million people but a conservative estimate places the number at eight hundred thousand—unquestionably, as far as any record goes, the largest audience ever assembled on the face of this earth. O'Connell spoke, but his speech is not preserved. Some few sentences are preserved—sentences which, torn from their context and separated by nearly



a century of time from the circumstances and the atmosphere in which they were delivered, still have power to move and thrill. Words fail to describe the moving scenes that were there enacted. It happened that the eminent English poet and novelist, Bulwer Lytton, was present at that meeting and he has embalmed in immortal verse his impressions of that meeting.

Once to my sight the giant thus was given  
Walled by wide earth and roofed by boundless Heaven  
Beneath his feet a human ocean lay  
And wave on wave blowed into space away.  
Methought no clarion could have sent its sound  
Even to the centre of the hosts around,  
But as I thought arose a sonorous swell  
As from some Church tower swings a silvery bell  
Aloft and clear from airy tide to tide  
It glided easily as a bird may glide,  
To the last verge of that vast audience sent  
It played with each wild passion as it went,  
And now the uproar roused and now the murmurs stilled  
And sobs and laughter answered as it willed.  
Then did I learn by what spell of infinite choice  
To rouse or lull as the sweet human voice.

Another great meeting was planned on Clontarf Plain but the British Government was now thoroughly aroused and the meeting was forbidden. The British fleet anchored in Clontarf Bay, ready to sweep the Plain with its guns. All Europe was aflame with Revolution. The British Parliament was concerned in a bitter struggle over the repeal of the Corn Laws and, in the general confusion, the great repeal movement broke down and with it, literally broke the heart of O'Connell. He struggled on but illness overtook him and he hurried back to his beloved Darryname among the Kerry Hills, hoping he would get some respite. This soon proved to be hopeless and realizing the end was near he decided to hurry to Rome in the hope of spending his few remaining days in the sheltering arms of his Mother Church. He got as far as Genoa, where he took to his bed, and three days later passed away leaving as his last request that his body be taken back to Ireland for burial. Five weeks later, in a year forever memorable in Irish history, 1847, while the fell shadow of famine was resting heavily upon that devoted land and agony and death were being planted at uncounted thousands of hearth-stones, for the time being hunger and privation and death itself was forgotten, and amid unparalleled scenes, amid the lamentations of a mourning nation, the body of the liberator was laid at rest in Glasnevin Cemetery beneath the sod he loved so well.

\* \* \* \* \*

O'CONNELL as a statesman, O'Connell as a lawyer, O'Connell as an orator, any one of these might well furnish the theme for a separate address. I do not intend to deal with any of them tonight but perhaps in closing you will permit me to deal with O'Connell as an orator for a very few minutes. Nature had splendidly endowed him as a public speaker: he had a commanding presence:

he had a voice that could be heard a mile, not strident or raucous but smooth and modulated like the tones of a great cathedral organ it rolled out over those vast audiences until it made itself distinctly audible on the utmost verge. Charles Dickens, then a young cub reporter on the London Times, was sent to the House of Commons to report his speech and he bears this testimony that for two hours he laid down his pen and forgot the very purpose for which he was there as he listened entranced to the eloquence that flowed from the lips of O'Connell.

Competent judges have declared him to be the greatest of all orators, ancient or modern. This may well be a subject on which men may differ. Perhaps there are no standards except the standard which each individual sets up in his own consciousness. For my part I can say this. I have read Demosthenes as, when speaking to the free men of Athens he aroused them to that pitch of frenzy in which they shouted, "Lead us, lead us, against Phillip." And that seemed fine indeed. At a later date I have read Cicero speaking in the Roman Senate. In chiseled and polished language and with tremendous dramatic effect he held up to the gaze of his fellow senators the black treason, the bloody treachery of the arch-conspirator Cataline, and that seemed to me to be finer still. Or at a later date I have read—and in imagination I have listened—to Edmund Burke, in that great theatre of the British House of Commons as he soared on the majestic wing of a gorgeous eloquence to every clime where there are wrongs to be redressed, as he asserted in fervid and glowing eloquence the rights of the common people in France, in India and in America. But my imagination has conjured up one greater scene: out on his native heath, beneath, as he said, "those blue hills within whose shadows you and I were cradled," speaking to an audience the largest that ever listened to a single human voice, an audience whose hopes and fears, whose joys and sorrows were mirrored in his own soul, an audience that listened with bated breath and strained attention as from golden throat and silver tongue, from massive brain and mighty heart he told the tale of seven centuries of Irish wrongs. And literally far spreading acres of Irish peasantry were lashed into fury or hushed into repose as the voice of O'Connell rose and fell.

\* \* \* \* \*

LET me close by quoting the opinion of two men whose views the world still holds in high regard. William Ewart Gladstone said of O'Connell: "The greatest popular leader the world has ever known." Thomas Carlyle, that stern old Scot who seldom paid a compliment to any man and when he did only to the heroes of earth. Listen to his tribute to O'Connell: "One of God's own annointed kings."

So spake the sage of Chelsea and with his tribute we take leave of O'Connell. Other peoples have their great names that will never die but, speaking to those of you who may be Irishmen, or

in whose veins there flows the blood of Erin, I can surely with confidence say this. As long as love of liberty remains a virtue, as long as disinterested patriotism shall be deemed worthy of admiration by the sons of men, as long as Irishmen shall continue to draw inspiration from the memory of their great dead, yea as long as Erin's green isle shall bring forth her sons to do and dare what Irishmen at home and abroad have done and dared in the centuries gone, so long will all Irishmen, not only those of high estate but, nobler still, those for whom he gave his life—the indwellers of the hovels of the lowly poor—cherish with a love imperishable the name and memory of Daniel O'Connell.



# **Eatonia**

*tells the Story*

... the story of how merchandise is subjected to rigorous, scientific tests to determine quality of fabric and materials—how it is compared with other goods in the same or higher price line—passed by a board of experienced merchandise men whose training make them able to recognize Value. Then, and only then, are the goods branded with the stamp of approval . . . the Eatonia label! Thus, in judging Eatonia merchandise, we can say with assurance . . .

***You can't beat Eatonia for Reliability  
and Value!***

**THE T. EATON CO.**  
WESTERN LIMITED

## Sweden

*By Paul R. Brecken, B.Sc.*

---

ANY FELLOW who attempts to go around and do a certain amount of talking finds himself in some very embarrassing situations. I found myself in one of them not long ago. One place where they usually get hold of me is at the Young People's organization at First Baptist Church. Last time I was there I was terribly rushed, and, before going, ran into the house and grabbed an outline of a talk and put it in my pocket—then went over there and got it off my chest. After, one of the members was good enough to move me a vote of thanks, and said that he thought he had enjoyed the address better than the last time he had heard it, and it dawned on me that it was the same one that I had given on my last visit.

Incidentally, I have talked so much about Sweden during the last two or three months that I have almost got myself convinced that I know something about it. I see certain men before me who have heard me two or three times, and one thing that I will ask of them is to be good enough not to give me away if I contradict myself.

I do not know exactly what you are anxious to have tonight, but I do think that Sweden is a country from which we, as a democratic country, can learn as much, if not more, than from any country at the present time. I think we have to face this fact—that there must be a limited control in any country, in any organization. I do not think I have to argue that in the Military Institute. Where I spend most of my time is in school. A limited control is necessary. A democracy is based on the assumption that that control will be exercised by the electorate as a whole, and, without wanting to be pessimistic in any way, I sometimes wonder if in that desire to give everyone a controlling hand in the government, we have not, in democracies, been a little too free with the franchise. When people become bewildered, and when you get a group of voters just like a herd of sheep being stampeded here and there by anyone who comes along with a freak proposition and unable as a collective unit to make up their minds to any definite form of procedure, then you have opened the way for a dictator. The people simply throw up their hands and say, "What is the use?" and if someone comes along at that moment and says: "You do not know what to do, but I will show you what to do", it is surprising how the majority of the people are ready to be stampeded and, without wishing to be at all personal, we have come dangerously close to that right in the Province of Alberta. I do think that, if democracies are to survive we must study very much more carefully how the franchise is to be used, and carry on very much more carefully the campaign of education for the voter. And when I say a campaign of education, I mean a

different thing from propaganda, because education and propaganda are two different things.

\* \* \* \* \*

I THINK, ON THAT BASIS, we can learn more from the Scandinavian countries than any country I know of, and, in saying that, I do not mean necessarily we should take over everything that they have.

The people, to start with, have a background which, unfortunately, we have not. In Sweden itself, they claim that they can trace their ancestors back 10,000 years. Be that as it may, there is no question that it can be traced back from two to three thousand years very definitely, and the probability is that over ninety per cent. of the population of Sweden have descended for generations there in that same country. A good deal of emigration—very little immigration—has taken place and they claim to have a record of one thousand years of self-government. They have, in a form, had an application of the old feudal system, it is perfectly true, and yet never carried to the extreme that it was in the British Isles, and always much more directed by the mass of the people as a whole. That gives them a very definite background which we lack.

Then you come to another side, which applies to them and yet is not so very greatly different from us. Sweden has not had a war for 125 years. It was 1814 when she lost certain territory to Russia. The result is that she has been very favorably situated in that regard, just as we are in Canada, and has given her attention—and this is a very striking comparison—almost entirely to the promotion of social rather than military organization.

Incidentally, Denmark itself—I will jump, if you will excuse me, more or less back and forth between Denmark and Sweden as they do overlap a good deal and are very closely allied in their forms of organization—is a bit apprehensive at the present time on a military point. The Duchy of Schleswig-Holstein, which was stolen from her by Germany in 1864 and given back to her under the Treaty of Versailles when a vote was taken in 1925 under the self-determination clause is the most fertile part of Denmark, and Germany has got her eye on it again; and, of course, Denmark cannot put up any resistance. She has had no navy that counted for anything since Nelson destroyed her navy in 1803 at the Battle of Copenhagen. I question if she has a standing army of even a brigade.

Jumping back to Sweden, there is rather an amusing thing. Sweden has a population of about six millions and, from a military point of view, they have little strength. I never saw a city where policemen were so much in evidence as in Stockholm, and I never saw a city where there was apparently as little need for them. I doubt whether there is such a law-abiding city in the world as Stockholm, and yet you meet policemen everywhere. They have a trained

force, undoubtedly, whom they call policemen, who can readily be turned into a military force if necessary. But again, as compared with her neighbors, as far as strength is concerned, it is almost negligible.

\* \* \* \* \*

FROM THE GOVERNMENT POINT OF VIEW—the point of view of the franchise—and I rather hesitate to say this for fear of being misunderstood, because I know that we all have the greatest sympathy for the people who are really in need, and the ones whom we ordinarily term, as on relief. Those who, because of stress, have found it impossible to make a living have nothing but our sympathy: While in private conversation one evening, a leading public man said this to me: “You know we will never get out of the mess we are in at the present time, so long as everyone running for office, is catering to the unemployed vote”. You know there is considerable truth in that.

In Denmark they have a socialist government, a labor government avowedly socialistic in its outlook, and yet they finance on perfectly orthodox lines. There is no attempt, for instance, to finance with a printing press, or stick stamps on every week or anything of that kind as far as I know, but they have a form of direct relief. And when glancing through one of their Journals for September, I noticed that they had in it an outline of the unemployed, and the latest figures given there were for September of this year, 1938, and it was about between 15 and 16%. Now then, during this period we gave our percentage of unemployed as 10% of the total population, whereas their 15% is of the registered workers, which is very different. Now, I do not know just how they arrive at 15% of the registered workers, but it is very much smaller than 10% of the total population. In Denmark a person on direct relief cannot cast a vote, and he does not get his vote back again until he is employed properly. I do know that the thing which struck me about that was that it is a regulation of a Labor government.

When you come over to Sweden, Sweden claims to have no unemployment, and Sweden gets around it this way—just a wangling of terms of course. They have a public works program planned for months ahead; road construction, bridge building, public buildings; and they try to work it so that with public buildings and things of that kind, there will be a lot of inside employment in the winter time, and in the summer time almost all outside employment. Under direct relief they have, of course, provision for what we call unemployable persons who physically are unable to work; old age pensions, relief for persons physically unfit, and so on. But as far as an able person is concerned, there is no direct relief. But any person can apply for Government employment, and is taken on without any questions asked, and he can leave any time at a day's notice—quit tonight, and say he is not coming back tomorrow.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

Now, the thing that makes it possible to run that and not get it overloaded is the fact that they have a very fair minimum wage, which is strictly enforced, and the Government employment is paid at 10% below the minimum wage. Now this is enough for a person to make a living and yet is no incentive to stay there, if he can get industrial employment, and therefore, it works automatically. While, of course, for practical purposes all this Government work is relief work, it takes care of its unemployment problem and seems to work out very satisfactorily.

\* \* \* \* \*

THEN YOU COME to the matter of the attitude toward the government. I think we have to admit this here—whether there is reason for this or not, I am not going to stop to argue—that the attitude of a great many persons and certainly in the main, the attitude of those who are what we would call on relief is: "Here is that government, a paternal sort of institution, run by a bunch of blooming capitalists— it is up to us to get as much as we can out of them." I think I am not far wrong in this. There is on the part of the governments something that encourages that to a certain extent—a sort of paternal attitude. "Now, of course, we are away above you, but we are going to take care of you."

I think that in Sweden you have a training among the people to realize that they are the government, and that the man who grafts on the government is stealing from his neighbor, just as if he went into his neighbor's house and took something. I ran into conversation with persons with that attitude to a great extent, and I do think that it has become very general, and I think that that is the attitude that the members of the government themselves have taken toward those who are unfortunate. "You have been unfortunate for the time, and we are going to help you out. But you are not going to dictate as to how it is to be done."

I was talking on this to the Canadian Club, and some questions came up—perhaps I can head off one question right here. The first was: "How do they run that public employment, and not have men sit down and loaf all day, not doing real work?" I remember being down in the States one day about a year ago. At a vaudeville show a fellow came out and nearly brought the house down by telling a story about WPA relief camps. One fellow was telling another a sad story about a fellow who had broken his neck, and said: "How did that happen?" He said he was in WPA work and was leaning on his shovel and the termites ate the bar out, and he broke his neck. On this whole continent, there is more or less that attitude toward relief work—it is loafing with a shovel in the hand a big part of the time. I could not answer that question except that in conversation over there, it did not seem to be a problem, and I suspect that this very attitude and training has minimized that thing—that the man

himself feels he is working for his neighbors, and the neighbors also feel that they are working for them, and there is not the tendency to loaf on the job. But whether it is a factor I am not prepared to say definitely.

\* \* \* \* \*

SWEDEN compares very closely with Canada. Denmark has absolutely no natural resources. Denmark for practical purposes is just a sand bar which anybody from the east knows is just like Prince Edward Island although, naturally, it is an isthmus instead of an island. The highest point of land in Denmark is a little over three hundred feet above sea level—just about the same as Prince Edward Island if you measured from the top of one of their trees. They have no oil, no forests, no coal, no minerals. The only thing they have in the way of natural resources is fisheries around the coast and this is not a particularly good coast. The sandy condition of the soil is not very good for agriculture which they have developed almost entirely by artificial methods. For instance, take the peninsula of Jutland, which was nothing but a sandy point covered with heather, and which they have developed into their greatest agricultural district. They ripped up the heather and put in tons of fertilizer, and built it up. It was not a natural resource. Now then, come over to Sweden, and you see the many good natural resources they have, and they parallel ours very closely.

Fifty per cent. of Sweden is forest land. No tree gets cut in Sweden without having one planted in its place. In fifty years time, their forests will be just as good as they are today. In Sweden they have a chart in the form of a circle, and so many degrees represent the export of one thing and another. This gives a comparison of Sweden and Canada, because we run very closely in our exports of building and forest products, and both compete in the British market, and in the Empire, in lumber, pulp wood, timber and the finished product, paper. In some things Canada led, some things Sweden. I met a young Swedish forestry engineer who had been in Canada investigating our lumber business, and looking for pointers and so on, and I said to him, "Did you pick up any pointers when you were in Canada?" He rather smiled, and said: "I think I found out how things should not be done." He pointed out a few cases, particularly the practice of cutting those great Douglas firs out in British Columbia fifteen feet and twenty feet above the ground in order to get them out more easily, and leaving that stump, fifteen to twenty feet high and often ten feet in diameter, containing hundreds of thousands of board feet of lumber, to rot, and then leaving the slashings around, increasing the danger of fire, and no reforestation. He just stood appalled at the wastefulness of it.

When the tree is cut, it is gone. We are living on the natural resources. We are using them up. Their territory is about 50 per cent. greater than the British Isles. They realize the importance of their lumber supply, and are taking care to conserve it. Their coast



fisheries compare very favourably with our fisheries on both the Atlantic and the Pacific coasts, but when you take into consideration our enormous fresh water fisheries, there is no comparison. Nine per cent. of their land is arable, and yet 27 per cent. of the national production is agriculture. They just run about neck and neck with us in the matter of electrical production. Sweden and Canada, in production per capita, lead the world, and they are very close. Our production is more of an industrial development; theirs more of a domestic. Sixty per cent. of the farms of Sweden are electrified. You can go into the average farm house in Sweden, particularly South Sweden, and almost all of them are electrified. They have vacuum cleaners, electric washing machines, electric milking machines if they have enough cows, and, in many places, electric wood choppers, and things of that kind—just some of the conveniences on farms which we saw.

\* \* \* \* \*

GOING over into Norway, even on isolated farms on the fiords, you find electrical appliances of that kind, telephones and so on, although I do not think Norway is so far advanced as either Sweden or Denmark. I think we can go a great way towards these conveniences on our farms, although we have greater distances to cope with. Probably as a solution of our agricultural problem, the electrifying of farms and getting conveniences into the homes means a great deal. There are sections down in Ontario along the hydro-electrical developments where the farms are very much as you find them in Sweden. I think certain sections of Ontario are the only places to compare with it at all.

You come to the matter of mines. Sweden has tremendous iron mines. All of them that amount to anything are north of the Arctic circle. The trains of Sweden are run by electric locomotives. For practical purposes the railroads of Denmark are diesel; of Sweden, electric; and Norway, steam. That seemed to be pretty

## OIL ROYALTIES

For full information write

**Clifton C. Cross & Co. Limited**

Lancaster Building

**C A L G A R Y**

Branches: Winnipeg - Regina - Saskatoon - Vancouver

much the run of the thing. They go up and bring that ore down from the Arctic and Swedish steel is, of course, one of the world's standards. But when you consider our coal, nickel, copper, gold, silver, cobalt, zinc and lead, and all the minerals that we have in such enormous quantities in addition to iron, there is no comparison in natural resources. Yet Sweden has a debt per capita which would very closely approximate ours if we eliminated our war debt and the National Railways debt, and these, of course, are the big items in ours. Sweden has not had a war for 125 years to run up a war debt, and she has made her railroads pay, so that makes a big difference.

I think that we can learn from some of these things very definitely. The quickest way for a government to hang itself in Sweden is to wind up the year with a deficit. They have an old fashioned idea that budgets should be balanced, and a government would be taking its political life in its hands to report a deficit at the end of the year. They have a very advanced scale of old-age pensions, of medical aid and things of that kind for their people. They balance their budget, and the average direct income tax—of course they have all their hidden taxes just as we have—as far as I could check up is slightly less than ours on the whole; not a great deal of difference, but for direct taxation their average is five per cent. of income for all purposes, which I think again makes us slightly envious.

\* \* \* \* \*

PERHAPS the thing that has accomplished more than anything else in Sweden is the Co-operative, and I will have to run over this very quickly. But here is the interesting feature. They state very definitely that they took the idea of the Co-operative from the British Isles, and yet Co-operatives in the British Isles have never begun to make the impression they have in Sweden, and yet they have a larger membership. In the British Isles 45 per cent. of the population are members of co-operatives, in Sweden 33 per cent.

Marquis Childs, in his book "Sweden, the Middle Way," claims that the co-operatives do nearly 25 per cent. of the business, but I think he is off at that. They only claim 17 per cent. to 18 per cent. of the business. Thirty-three per cent. of the population do 17 to 18 per cent. of the turnover, and yet I think that they claim, and claim rightly, that they control the price for the consumer. The members of the co-operatives on the whole are the ones with the lowest purchasing power, and, therefore, the per capita expenditure of the members of the co-operatives is not so much as of those who are not members. They claim this as compared with Britain, where the co-operatives had not had a pronounced influence and here is where their training and their folk high schools come in. They will not take a person in those folk high schools who has not been out in active life for three years. They come there to discuss problems of citizenship—not to pass examinations. They carry on correspondence

courses whose function is almost entirely to teach co-operation and to study economic problems. They claim at any one time to have a membership of 200,000 in those schools, and of the adult population who are voters, at least one-third to one-half have gone through those high schools.

They have this tremendous background of people who have been studying problems, and they claim largely in this way to have gained on the British Isles. For instance, they have had fights with the cartels—trusts we would call them. They would market their products and the cartel would come in and undersell them. In the British Isles they have done that, and the people have stampeded. In Sweden they claim that the members have been loyal and purchased through the co-operatives, even at higher prices, and they have won out. That is a matter of training.

The other thing that they claim as compared with the British Isles and their co-operatives, is that their policy has always been to undersell, if possible, the ordinary merchants, who are not members of the co-operatives, whereas, in Britain, the co-operative has always upheld the policy of selling goods at the market price and then returning the profit in dividends. In Sweden selling lower than the regular dealer perhaps limits the profits to 5 per cent., while most co-operatives do not earn 5 per cent., and the average earnings is a little over 3 per cent. The policy of lower prices brings customers and they sell a great deal to people who are not members of the co-operatives, and of course, profit comes back to them in the form of much lower prices.

Let me just give one or two very interesting illustrations. I spent a morning at the co-operative headquarters in Stockholm, where we had the good fortune to find ten or twelve persons who spoke English to chat with us; and they spoke English about as well as the average soldier in France spoke French, but we got things over fairly well. We went around and chatted with them and sat in the Board Room, and met people who came in. Propaganda, yes, but they are glad to spread information about their work.

The thing that surprised me about everything else was their friendly attitude to the private manufacturer. None of that: "We will get that son of a gun if it takes our last cent."

One of their prize illustrations is the manufacture of rubbers. Three years ago they claimed that they cost the equivalent of \$2 per pair. The co-operative went into the manufacture of rubbers for sale. Today rubbers sell at about 50 to 60 cents per pair. I raised the question, "What has become of the private manufacturer?" They said that he is making more money than ever for two reasons. His turnover has increased tremendously, and he has been forced to adopt more efficient methods. They said: "We are perfectly willing to have the private manufacturer make a profit, as long as we get goods at a reasonable price."

Here is another illustration that came up. They admitted that within the last twelve months for the first time they had begun to feel the pressure of the private manufacturer. There were a few lines on which the private manufacturer was under-selling them. "What are you going to do about that?" They replied: "It is a new problem—we have not met it before. But for one thing we are not going to lose money, and if he can turn them out better than we can, let him have the field; we are not going to stick there. All we want to know is that we are going to be able to purchase things at a reasonable price, and if he can undersell us he can have the field, and we will pull out. If he jumps his prices, we will go in again." In other words, their method of controlling prices is by feeling out the market, and, when you talk to them of our method of appointing royal commissions and investigating and regulating prices by government order and that kind of thing, they just hold up their hands in holy horror, and say: "That is not democracy—that is facsimism, and it is government dictation to the private manufacturer."

Remember this—I would like to make this point very clear—I have only talked to you about the consumers' co-operative. There is also the housing co-operative, and the marketing co-operative. The marketing co-operative is supported by the government to a certain extent, not fundamentally different from our Wheat Marketing Board, and the pegging of wheat at 80 cents and that sort of thing. But, instead of pegging the price at 80 cents, and raising it from general taxation, or adding it to the public debt, they have a definite method. For instance, on their dairy products they have a pegged price, but they make that up by levies on margarine, which competes with dairy products, on certain cattle foods, and other lines that enter into it, and they balance the thing there. These taxes pay for the bonus on dairy products, and, therefore, it is run on an absolutely economic basis of a balanced budget.

The marketing co-operative has government support and co-operation, but the consumers' co-operative and the housing co-operative have absolutely nothing to do with the government. They are not backed by the government—they never come to the government and get a bonus. They stand on their own feet financially, and are purely a co-operative movement of the people themselves. I think that is a point we need to realize very definitely.

#### INSTITUTE LIBRARY

The Alberta Military Institute will be pleased to receive donations of books, on Military matters, biographies or other similar subjects, for its library.

## New Uses for Farm Products

*By D. G. McKensie*

---

**I** SUPPOSE if one were to ask what the basic problem in Canada is, a variety of answers could be expected. For purposes of this address, however, I wish to suggest that the basic problem facing Canada is that of developing ways and means of assuring everyone of its citizens a reasonable standard of living. In the United States, President Roosevelt hopes to solve this problem and revitalize the general business community by once more spending and lending nearly 4,000 million dollars over the course of the next few months. In Canada, the Dominion Government expects to step up Canadian business activity by lending and spending on house building and self-liquidating municipal projects. Both of these projects are designed to improve business and reduce unemployment and misery by providing work. Both are to be financed on borrowed money carrying interest costs and requiring to be repaid at some future date. At the most, therefore, they must be regarded as palliatives—something to carry us over the present emergency and not as a final solution to our problems.

What then is our final solution? From where does wealth originate and how are jobs created?

It is, perhaps, platitudinous to say that all wealth comes originally from nature, either in the form of products of the soil, fish from our lakes and rivers, and ores from below the soil. This statement being true, there is surely reason for optimism for the future in the fact that Canada is so richly endowed in natural resources.

It may also be commonplace to say that Agriculture is the greatest of our natural resources. But, measured in terms of population, in capital invested or in its contribution to the public wealth of the nation, that conclusion is inevitable.

In 1937, according to the Dominion Bureau of Statistics, the estimated gross value of agricultural production in Canada was \$1,051,698,000. It should be remembered that this was new wealth that never existed before and was created by the farmers of Canada. It carries no interest charges and imposes no conditions of repayment. It comes unburdened of these and its filaments of pure gold filter down into the deepest crannies of the commercial and industrial community. Transportation companies share in its distribution because they change the location of the goods produced. It is interesting to note in this connection that the Financial Post in a recent issue carried a despatch entitled "Grain Should Erase Rail Revenue

Loss," pointing out that the increased earnings in hauling the present year's crop would likely wipe out the estimated losses for 1938. Bankers and credit institutions share in it because they finance the production programme. Manufacturers share in it because they process the products produced and create the supplies necessary in the production. Distributors and merchants share in it because they merchandise both the goods produced and the goods consumed. Labourers share in it all along the line, over 6,000 unemployed men were sent to the harvest fields this year from Winnipeg alone, and finally the farmer shares in it by enjoying whatever is left. Truly the whole community profits from the wealth created by the farmers of Canada.

Similarly it is in the development of our great natural industries that we can hope to solve our unemployment problem. What is it that makes jobs? It is simply that the human race desires goods or services and is willing to exchange money or something else to get these goods or services. Therefore the basic step towards making jobs in Canada is to produce the things that will be sold. We must find ways to increase the volume of actual physical goods and all materials that have to be produced, hauled, transferred, stored, transported, refined, manufactured, processed, packaged, transported again, wholesaled, retailed and delivered. All along the way these goods must be accounted for, must be inspected, handled and re-handled. These are the processes that make jobs. The whole structure rests upon these actual physical goods and only four sources can supply them—the mines, the forests, the sea and the soil. And by far the greatest of these is the soil.

\* \* \* \* \*

**I** THINK one does not need to argue further as to the importance of agriculture on the business life of Canada. Agriculture depends on the urban community for servicing its requirements and processing its products. Industry finds the farms in Canada constitute its greatest consuming market and also the source of much of its raw materials. The inter-dependence of agriculture and industry is steadily becoming more appreciated. Henry Ford recognizes this in an inscription hung over the entrance to one of his factories, which reads—"Mankind Progresses From the Old to the New on a Human Bridge Formed by Those Who Labor in the three Principal Arts of Agriculture, Manufacture and Transportation." That inscription implies a partnership between these three great industries, and a partnership imposes on each the responsibility of studying and familiarizing themselves with the facts and problems of the other.

That agriculture faces many problems is, of course, apparent to all. There are problems of production, of land utilization, of rehabilitation, of breeding and marketing. Because of the limitation of time I can only speak of the marketing problem.

This seems to be an age of curious contradictions. On the one hand we have departments of agriculture, experimental farms, agricultural colleges, and many other agencies, spending huge sums of money and doing everything possible to improve and increase production. During the growing season great anxiety is felt over the growing crop. With the advent of harvest thousands of men are put to work, business generally is speeded up and everyone rejoices in the fact of a 325,000,000 bushel crop. On the other hand we have in Canada certain people planning for and advocating a programme of compulsory marketing and limited production. They purpose that we should agree to export quotas and be satisfied to confine our production to satisfy the quotas agreed upon.

Why all this contradiction? Must we assume that it is no longer possible to sell the Canadian wheat crop at a reasonable price? There is no discounting the fact that competition is becoming steadily keener on the markets of the world. The great consuming nations are determined to produce insofar as possible their own requirements and to buy as little as possible from abroad.

The world trade figures show a marked decline in the world wheat trade. The average annual shipments for the years 1922-23 to 1929-30 was 784 million bushels, while for the eight-year period 1930-31 to 1937-38 the average dropped to 621 million bushels, or an average shrinkage of 163 million bushels. The comparison of the average of the last three year period with the average of the years 1925-26 to 1927-28 would show even a much larger shrinkage. The importance of this shrinkage cannot be ignored.

But from a Canadian point of view certain favorable factors can be cited.

- (1) Canadian hard wheat is still the standard of perfection the world over and is in demand for blending purposes to bring up the quality of poorer wheats.
- (2) Great Britain continues to import annually from 210 to 220 million bushels. Canada can justly claim a major portion of that business both on the ground of being by far the best source of supply in case of war because of the large investments of capital that will only be repaid both as to interest and capital by exports.
- (3) The present tense situation in Europe must soon terminate. Either a world war will eventuate or improved trade conditions must return. Either or both will mean better trade prospects for wheat.

\* \* \* \* \*

**I**N THE FACE of these conditions what should be our future wheat marketing policy?

The Government of Canada is now definitely in the business of marketing wheat. It has guaranteed the wheat producer a mini-

mum price of 80 cents a bushel, basis No. 1 Northern at Fort William. This, at the moment, is approximately 20 cents a bushel above the market price and will mean that if the world price does not rise the taxpayer will have to assume a substantial loss running into millions of dollars. The question becomes, then, of extreme importance to every person in Canada and must be carefully studied in all its ramifications if we are to determine wisely what our policy should be.

At an Empire Conference held in Sydney, Australia, a few months ago, it was suggested that there should be set up in each of the Empire countries, producer councils, which would, under legislative enactment, have the power to determine export quotas from each of the Empire countries. These quotas would be determined in consultation with similar organizations in the other wheat exporting countries. The acceptance of this policy would mean that the producer of wheat in Canada would be compelled to deliver for export only such quantities as the council would determine. This would ultimately mean that the farmer would have to reduce his acreage as he would have no other means of disposing of his wheat.

Before deciding for such a policy certain basic truths must be recognized:

- (1) Canada is producing an exportable surplus of wheat, coarse grains, cattle, hogs, dairy products and poultry.
- (2) The character of our production is steadily changing. In Manitoba we have approximately sixty per cent. of the wheat acreage we had in 1915. But we have a greater acreage in coarse grains and fodder, more livestock and more dairying, etc. It is interesting to note that approximately one-fifth of the estimated gross income of Agriculture last year, or \$208,238,128.00, was derived from dairying, and the total revenue from the sale of cattle and cattle products last year in all of Canada exceeded the revenue from the sale of wheat by over \$100,000,000.00.

Very obviously, if the farmer is compelled to reduce his wheat acreage he will produce more coarse grain, fodder and livestock. But he is already on an export basis in respect to these products and any substantial increase in production of cattle or cattle products will only add to the marketing problems of the cattle raiser. Is anything to be gained in transferring the problem of the wheat grower to the livestock grower? Or must we become reconciled to the philosophy of limited production in all agricultural endeavor?

\* \* \* \* \*

**W**E HAVE TRIED to give industry higher prices by restricting the production of factory and shop. We have tried to give labor higher wages by restricting the output of the worker. Now shall we try to make the farmer prosperous by limiting his production? Is our only hope for the future in less from industry;



less from labor; and less from the farmers with the consequent smaller contribution to public wealth? More unemployment and the retarding of business generally.

What does this all add up to? Less for all instead of more for all. Are we to be content to continue with thousands of people ill fed, ill clothed and ill housed; thousands of people with only the bare necessities of life; thousands of people without adequate food; thousands without shoes, clothing, homes and equipment, and thousands of man hours of work waiting to be done? Must we decide to produce less and work less?

We would be foolish if we ignored the difficulties we face in entering the world markets. But are those difficulties in themselves not the very reason why we should tackle the problem of faulty distribution and under consumption and seek to extend our markets by finding inedible uses of agricultural products?

In 1934, according to Dominion Bureau of Statistics, the manufacturers of Canada secured \$440,000,000 worth of raw materials from the farms of Canada. Can this be increased? Would it be possible to raise this 440 million to five or six hundred million dollars? To the extent that this is done we solve the agricultural marketing problem.

Already research work of this character is well under way in the United States. A few years ago approximately twelve hundred business executives, scientists, chemists, government officials, engineers and national farm leaders set up the Farm Chemurgic Council of the United States. The phrase "Farm Chemurgic" is defined as meaning putting chemistry and applied science to work in industry for the farmer and indirectly for society generally.

Mr. Wheeler McMillan, president of the Farm Chemurgic Council, addressing the fourth annual meeting held at Omaha, Nebraska, April 25th to 27th, stated that the programme of the Council was:

- (1) To expand the knowledge of the possibilities for research to increase farm income and national welfare.
- (2) To serve as a clearing house for all chemurgic information
- (3) To direct the attention of private and industrial laboratories to chemurgic projects and to create popular support on behalf of research in public laboratories and educational institutions.
- (4) To increase the commercial application of chemurgic research accomplishments whenever ready for profitable use.
- (5) To discharge unsound promotions.
- (6) To finance in some instances desirable research projects, which neither public nor private laboratories are in a position to undertake.
- (7) To aid and co-operate with other agencies employed with allied efforts.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

In its brief history the Chemurgic movement has attracted nation wide interest. Many see in its programme the most favorable prospect for new wealth creating industries. It is conservatively estimated that in the past three years \$150,000,000 have been invested in chemurgic industries, resulting from public and private research, and all providing new jobs and new markets for farm products.

While the farm products of forty million acres are now used by chemurgic manufacturers, the Council believes that within ten years, through research and applied science, the productive capacity of 50,000,000 additional acres will be required to meet the demands for industrial farm crops. The rapid advance in chemurgics is evidenced by the new interest which is being taken in research in all spheres of agriculture, industry and science. The National Farm Chemurgic Council does not maintain its own laboratories but endeavors to activate research through the healthful co-operation of existing faculties. They include universities and land grant colleges, state agricultural experimental stations, departments of commerce and agriculture and private and industrial laboratories. Partially as a result of public interest enlisted by the chemurgists, a number of those agencies have been enabled to enlarge their research activities with gratifying results. Michigan State College recently received a \$500,000 trust endowment fund for specific research in seeking new uses for farm crops, and a soy bean laboratory has been established by the federal government at the University of Illinois. The Agricultural Adjustment Act of 1938 authorizes \$4,000,000 for four regional research laboratories to develop new and industrial markets for farm products.

\* \* \* \* \*

SPACE will not permit any extended review of the results already achieved and so a few illustrations will have to suffice.

Mr. Henry Ford in addressing the 1935 annual meeting of the chemurgic council announced that he was then using the following agricultural products in his factories:

- 60,000,000 lbs. of cotton.
- 500,000 bushels of corn.
- 2,500,000 gallons of molasses.
- 3,200,000 lbs. of wool.
- 1,500,000 square feet of leather.
- 350,000 lbs. of mohair.
- 20,000 hogs.
- and an almost unlimited quantity of soy beans.

During the ten year period 1914 to 1924 the horse and mule population of the United States dropped by approximately 10,000,000 head. That meant the loss of a substantial market for oats. The Americans did not accept the defeatist attitude and decide that nothing could be done. But, with the aid of science, they have created

a new demand and a new industrial use for oats. Three commercial products are now sold in the United States from the kernel or groat of the oat. They have produced "Avenex," a fine oat flour with peculiar preservative qualities which delay the oxidation of fats, oils and similar products, and "Levena" a pleasing perfumed cosmetic, sometimes used as a substitute for bath salts. \$200,000,000 a year is spent for cosmetics in the United States, and any substantial sale of Levena will compensate, in part, for the market lost through shrinkage in horse population. Then from the hull of the oat they are producing a high boiling limpid liquid known as "Furfural." Furfural is now recognized as one of the base chemicals, and its use is very varied and extensive. Mr. Courtney Wilson, Chicago, Ill., speaking at the recent annual meeting of the Chemurgic Council in Omaha, said in part as follows:

"Furfural may be instrumental in bringing all weather surfacing to thousands of miles of farm-to-market roads. The Missouri State College has found that by mixing a bituminous binder and Furfural with dirt from roadbed, the mixture can be rolled on the road at a cost of about \$2,500 a mile, compared to about thirty thousand a mile for a new concrete pavement."

He further estimated that there are two and a quarter million miles of secondary market roads needed in the United States. This would suggest a new substantial market available for the products of oats.

\* \* \* \* \*

**A**CTUALLY complete houses are now built in the United States from agricultural materials. Plastics, wall boards and paints are being made from such products as waste lumber, corn stalks, flax, clovers, hemp, etc. Mr. Albert White of Michigan State College, speaking at Omaha, said "Farms will become the principal source of building materials." He estimated that 500,000 new homes were needed annually in the United States. This too offers a potential market of vast proportions.

Similar progress is being made in the dairy industry. Through the introduction of new bacteria and new processes of fermentation, the varieties of cheese offered the public have been increased from four major types to fifty-eight varieties, in the last twenty-five years. This has increased per capita consumption from  $2\frac{3}{4}$  to 3 pounds in 1920 to  $5\frac{1}{2}$  pounds in 1937. The cheese industry has been extended into Idaho, Montana, Wyoming and the southern states where only a few years ago it was thought that because of climate the making of good cheese was impossible. In 1936 the State of Mississippi had fourteen cheese factories that paid approximately \$500,000 to 4,000 farmers for 33,000,000 pounds of milk. Two by-products of the cheese factory are also recovered. After ten years of research over 50,000,000 pounds of solids, of high nutritive value for man and beast, are recovered annually from the whey, all of which was formerly wasted. Milk casein is also recovered and used as a stabilizer rather than gelatine in making ice cream, etc.

From buttermilk several products are recovered:

- (1) Buttermilk powder—used in bread and bakery products, adds flavor and aids digestibility.
- (2) Buttermilk beads—float on water, used in large quantities in fish hatcheries and breeding ponds.
- (3) Buttermilk sprayed, in right quantities, into rye when being ground into flour, effects moisture and gives a better bread.
- (4) A low acid buttermilk powder from which they make a superior chocolate coating.
- (5) Milk paper—After ten years experimentation they have produced a clear transparent cellophane type of paper in any desired color.
- (6) Milk wool—Research already done promises success for making wool from milk casein.
- (7) Calcium and Phosphorus—from milk are more easily assimilated by the human body than are these same minerals from other sources. Now being used in the pharmaceutical field as a food and dietary supplement.

Agrol,—alcohol made from corn, sorghums, barley, wheat, rye and sweet potatoes is now past the experimental stage.

# ELECTRICITY

*“The Modern Genii”*

*through a province-wide distribution  
system gives continued impetus  
to Alberta's progress*

**CALGARY POWER COMPANY  
LIMITED**

Serving over 150 Communities throughout Alberta

A gasoline carrying ten per cent. alcohol is now being produced at Atchison, Kansas, and is being sold at 2,000 automobile service stations at a price competitive with gasoline. The plant at Atchison has a capacity of 10,000 gallons per day and will use approximately 1,500,000 bushels of grain annually. It is expected that three or four additional plants will be erected in the next year. Dr. Hale of Washington, in his book "Prosperity Beckons" said in part: "When this new industry—the alcohol industry—starting in this country in July of this year on a minute scale, with the first year's sales not to exceed \$500,000, we can confidently predict the course of its progress. Within a few years there will be hundreds of agricude alcohol plants under operation. Within ten years we should be closely approaching the 20 per cent. alcohol blend for automobiles and an appreciable share of cellulose and other acetate markets. Perhaps \$1,000,000,000 will not be out of the way in representing the alcohol industry in 1946. By 1956, just twenty years in the future, there is every reason to believe that this mighty industry will be producing 50,000,000,000 gallons agricude alcohol at a selling price of between 15 and 20 cents per gallon with handsome profits. In all truth we await that day in all candor." "Its accomplishments in 20 years will have overtopped the sum total of revenues gained by the automobile and petroleum industries together in 1929".

Again, in another place in his book, he says: "Our fermentation industries in supply of agricude alcohol will require the cultivation of at least 100,000,000 acres of land in 20 years".

\* \* \* \* \*

**D**R. GEORGE WASHINGTON CARVER, great negro scientist of the United States, was born in slavery. After educating himself and graduating from college, he devoted his learning, capacity and time in an effort to improve conditions for the farmers of the southern states. He induced them to employ better cultural practices and to grow peanuts and sweet potatoes, as additional cash crops, to cotton. He succeeded so well that in a few years they had surpluses of both peanuts and sweet potatoes that could not be disposed of. He felt that, having induced these farmers to produce these crops he must do something to help market them. Through scientific study he was able to produce from the peanut over 300 useful articles including cheese, candies, coffee, pickles, oils, shaving lotions, dyes, lard, linoleum, flour, breakfast foods, soap, face powder, shampoos, printers' ink and axle grease.

From the sweet potato he produced over 100 products, including starch, library paste, vinegar, shoe blacking, ink dyes and molasses.

This old scientist refused a retainer fee of \$100,000. a year offered by a large corporation, choosing rather to dedicate his learning and capacity to helping his own people.

And so the possibilities of industrial use of agricultural products open up. Authorities predict that the power alcohol plastics and plastic housing industries are destined to become among the nations' great industrial advances.

Other chemurgic markets for farm crops will be provided in the production of new cotton products, cotton reinforced road construction, potato starch, fibrous materials, tung oil, paints, tamin cellulose products, construction materials, caseins, vegetable oils, industrial sugars, automotive and transportation vehicles, textiles, furfural fuels, insecticides, cordage, medicine, fine papers and scores of chemical products that will play an ever increasing role in the economic life of the nation.

\* \* \* \* \*

THIS idea of transmitting crops into inedible commodities and into the basic commodities of industry is, indeed, a massive one. With potential markets of these possibilities opening up there can be no thought of restricting or limiting our production. Rather must we accept the challenge of agriculture and industry, and devote our energy, capacity and learning to this programme of expansion and creativeness. Let us be strong in the faith that the potential productive powers of the Canadian people, of Canadian engineering ingenuity and of the Canadian farmers are far above any level that has yet been achieved. Far better combinations of brains and machinery and soil are yet to be accomplished. In this great young country we need not be dragged into the poverty of a decadent Orient, nor into the miseries of a confused Europe. We are a hopeful people, owners of a vast domain of soil and atmosphere, enriched with rain and energized by a radiant sun. We have an ambitious people, whose muscles are multiplied by myriads of horse power, and in whose hands are unparalleled tools of science and whose feet still walk in the unregimented paths of liberty.

Truly there need be no limits, except those of knowledge and effort, to the wealth that can be produced in Canada. Provided with ample markets for farm products, the soil can be enabled to produce the innumerable desires of a great free people.

## With the Imperial Cavalry 1911-1915 from a N.C.O.'s point of view

*By Lieut. A. J. Cawthorne*

I AM going to talk to you about my service with the 19th Hussars—to give them their full title, 19th Queen Alexandra's Own Royal Hussars. I have taken the year 1911, because in that year great changes took place in the training of cavalymen; especially the 1st Cavalry Brigade which was always stationed at Aldershot. I had had two years with the cavalry before that, and prior to that, six years with the infantry. I joined the infantry in January, 1901, and I transferred to the cavalry in 1907.

That year, as some of the older members will remember, was a very difficult year, both in industry and in practically everything else in England. We had the dockyards employees out on strike; also the railway employees were on strike, and then, to cap all, there was the Agadir crisis. You remember when the German gunboat went into the French port in North Africa and almost caused a war, and although we were given to understand we were being taken from Aldershot to London to samp on Hackney Marshes, for strike duty, it was really a partial mobilization in case a war developed. That is my impression now. Of course, I was only a N.C.O. at the time, and you know a N.C.O.'s view is rather restricted. They had enough troops camped in and around London to have eaten all the strikers, so I think there must have been something else at the back of this mobilization. We were there about ten days, and were only called out once, supposed to be to quell riots in the East India Dock Road. All we did was to ride to the top of the road and draw swords, and that was all that was necessary.

With regard to the officers under whom I had the honor to serve, I do not think in any regiment—cavalry or infantry—you could have met a finer bunch of officers and gentlemen than there were at that time serving with the 19th Hussars. The understanding of their men, and the way they treated the N.C.O.'s, and the loyalty those men had for the officers was something to be very proud of. The Commanding Officer at that time was Col. Sir Philip Chetwode. His name will go down in history as being the cavalry leader in Palestine during the war. Prior to Sir Philip Chetwode, Sir John French also commanded the regiment, so they turned out other famous men besides myself!

During the time we were stationed at Aldershot—about 1911—was the time we scrapped the old cutting sabre, and were issued with a straight sword with a large hilt. That sword was not particularly

popular with us at that time on account of the large hilt. We did a tremendous lot of training in close formation, and that hilt was pretty hard on the thigh when the other fellow pumped into you. It was far more serviceable than the old cutting sword, and I might mention here that that sword (I think you have the same at the present time) would give you four inches more reach at the charge than a man gets with his lance. I had the opportunity later on of seeing the effectiveness of that four inches more.

\* \* \* \* \*

**I**N 1912 we had a mobilization order one night, and they had to bring some of the men who were on leave in from the town of Aldershot. We had to entrain at Farnborough, and were taken right away to Southampton, and detrained next morning. We went on board ship there, all our horses, first line transports, medical corps, and everything just as if we were going to war.

We embarked everything we had on this ship by midday, and we had a meal on the boat. Then were told to disembark and went back to Aldershot. It was about the quickest mobilization, I should think, any G.O.C. could wish for.

At this time, we really began to think there was something behind this particular training which we were doing. Those of you who know the topography of Aldershot will remember the Long Valley and Laffins Plain. At this time we seemed to do nothing but fight rear guard actions, regimental training and brigade training. We did

the same thing across Laffins Plain and the Long Valley. I was told off at this time for brigade signaller. Then it was all visual signals. We were issued with the field telephone, the D-3 and the Stephens D-2.

One day we rode up to visit a cossack post. At this time they were going in for asking the men questions, in order to get the men to think for themselves. I was holding the brigade major's horse. We had ridden up to one of these little posts by the Basingstoke Canal, and among the men at this post was a Cockney by the name of Trubshaw. Brigade Major asked him what his duties were, to which he replied, going over the same old thing, that sentries always had to be on the alert, and in the case of any unusual occurrence, inform the commander of the post. Brigade Major then asked: "What would you call an unusual occurrence?" Trubshaw looked at him and said "An unusual occurrence, if I saw a bleeding battleship come a sailing up the Long Valley, it would be an unusual occurrence". It is needless to say what happened to Trubshaw. He was an unusual case, and I shall refer to him a little later.

\* \* \* \* \*



**A**BOUT this time we had posters pasted up showing the different units, uniforms and badges of all the German regiments. This was in the fall of 1912, so they must have had some idea we were going to war with Germany. We became familiar with the different units, and their badges and rank so we could easily distinguish them when we actually went to war.

In 1912 also we had manoeuvres in the Eastern Counties. Prior to that, manoeuvres had always taken place for cavalry regiments on Salisbury Plain where there was plenty of room. Instead of having camp, we were billeted at night in farms, and put our horses in the barns, and all that sort of thing, as we did when we got to France. And we went into intensive training. I think it was 1912, the first time aircraft were used on manoeuvres, and they were those ordinary old biplanes, with four wings, and it was not considered then that they would take away much of the duties of the cavalry.

We also had considerable work in training horses to swim during 1912. When we went on manoeuvres in the Eastern Counties from Aldershot, we started operations really from the time we left our barracks and one of our tasks was to swim the Thames at Windsor. We pulled our first line transport over and used an endless rope to take the horses across. And to take the men over, we lashed bales of hay in tarpaulins, and floated them across, and in less than two hours they had the whole of the first cavalry brigade on the other side.

\* \* \* \* \*

**A**FTER manoeuvres in 1912 we finished our three years with the 1st Cavalry Brigade and were sent to Hampton Court and Hounslow—two squadrons at Hounslow and one at Hampton Court. Most of this time was taken up with trying to look smart after this strenuous training we had been through at Aldershot. We were now employed on any duties that were required in the City of London. We actually did mounted duty in 1912 at Whitehall. I think it was about the first time any regiment has been used at Whitehall other than the Horse Guards. We also took part in the Lord Mayor's Show. At these small stations where there is just one cavalry regiment, you are required to go away to musketry camp each year, and the regiment stationed near London relieves the Guards while they go away and do their course. That is how we happened to do these duties in London at that time.

In 1914, prior to August 4th, we had medical inspections and the horses were looked over by veterinaries, and mobilization equipment was checked. The day after war was declared (I kept no diary so it has to be from memory) we were told to hand in all our jack-boots, bushys, and all dress uniforms. These were packed into barrels and stored at Hampton Court, and a couple of days after we left for the Cambridge district. The whole of the south of England seemed to be an armed camp at this time. We, being a regiment not

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

in close touch with brigade headquarters, part of which we formed, were chosen divisional cavalry for the infantry division of the first line that was proceeding to France from practically every port in the south of England, there was a continuous stream of ships going across to France taking troops.

We went to Rouen and entrained right away. I never saw any portion of the division of which we were a unit, but we entrained for an unknown destination. Only the senior officers seemed to know what we were doing. We travelled all one day. At night, we were still in the train, and we still kept in the train all night, and seemed to be travelling back. Anyway, we were shunted back and forth and the following morning I did not know where we were, but we did not detrain until the second night, when it was dark, and were taken into a field. There were stooks of grain where we camped until day-break.

This would be after the 20th of August. The following morning we were told off as independent patrols. I had four men besides myself, my Squadron Leader—Major Parsons—said to me, "You are up against the real thing. I do not want you sending a man back telling me you have seen a German. Your men are good, if not better than any Germans sent out of Germany. I want to know where they are in force. If you meet any patrols and think you can lick them, lick them good and proper."

This same cockney, Trubshaw, was in my section. What I did not really like about him was his language.

I never had more than four men when on patrol. This particular morning Trubshaw was riding with me. I had one man out as point and two men behind. We rode for half an hour, and still had not seen anything. Mons could be seen away to our right. You could run into anything on a corner. The man out as point was to wait for instructions before going any further. The Squadron Leader had told me they would be following in about half an hour. I figured the squadron would be about starting. I could see some farm buildings near the road. I whistled my point in, and we rode up to the buildings. I found the best way of finding if any enemy were in a small group of buildings was by galloping through them, and if anyone shot at you, you could go back and investigate. So this is what we did, and went back. At the back of this farm house was a lean-to shed, and you could climb up on this and get on the house. I was the only man with a pair of field glasses. I realized we could not stay very long, because the squadron would be leaving.

We could see a faint cloud of dust and my man Trubshaw said to me: "I believe the bleeders are coming." We passed the glasses along to each other, and it was not long before we could distinguish nine horsemen riding in a clump and one riding out ahead. Everyone, I do not care who they are, is a little bit jittery when they start. I had been in South Africa, and had been shot at, but, at the same time,

I will admit I was jittery. We were lying on top of the building, and I knew I was the say-so of my men, and as they got nearer Trubshaw would say: "They are bleeding Belgians." We were told there was no other cavalry out in front of us. They were still coming and within 200 yards I said, "I am going to shoot the man in front." We were still at loggerheads as to whether they were Belgians or Germans as I shot the first man and as he pitched forward off his horse, I said: "They're Germans. Let's go!" I do not think we were very accurate in shooting, but two others were shot down there, as they tried to get the first man away. They were as jittery as we were, and they lost two other men. The others galloped away.

This did a lot to prove to my own patrol that they were better than Germans as cavalymen, and, although we had the advantage of being dismounted, I could see no reason for ten properly trained men galloping away without any information at all, just because their leader and two other men had been shot.

I did not send any report back to my squadron leader. We went on from there and tried to follow up these fleeing Uhlans—the pride of the German Army. We were eventually able to find out where there was quite a force of German cavalry, so we could send a report back, giving the approximate position of where the Germans were in force. That was my first contact with the German cavalry. I was very proud of it. Of course, we won. That is all there was to it.

\* \* \* \* \*

**A**BOUT two days after, it settled down into the Battle of Mons. The infantry, of course, working up to consolidate any position we might hold, fell back behind them. Some people have the idea that the retreat from Mons was just a rout. It was nothing of the kind. It was just an orderly retirement. The different positions we took on the way back were well thought out beforehand, and we retired to these and no further.

We were stemming the advance with such a small force. The cavalry which had been told off as divisional cavalry, were switched about, first in front of one division, and then another, and then on the flanks. The cavalry really bore the brunt of the retreat. We were so tired riding. You could not say we ever had really more than a couple of hours rest, and fellows riding along would be nodding in their saddles asleep, and they would lose their caps and not know it. Any cavalryman knows there is no harder job than fighting a rear guard action, holding a certain post till the enemy were hard on your flanks, and then scrambling on your horse, and riding like hell to the next position and holding them up again.

Sometimes we were not more than a day, and sometimes we were three days practically in the same position, and we would hold it as long as possible before giving any ground.

We had been at Le Cateau one whole day, and on the second day we were holding the front line, which appeared very important, and was the reason for the German regiment of Uhlans attacking us there. I think that in all probability they were trying to cut off the cavalry from the infantry or the advance line from the supports. Anyway, they came in on our flank. It must have been great scout or intelligence work, so that the cavalry commanders knew about it before the real charge took place. Sir Philip Chetwode then commanded a Brigade of cavalry. He was one of our former Colonels. He commanded the 12th Lancers and the 18th Hussars, and things moved so quickly at this time, that evidently they had got news that this regiment of Uhlans were forming for attack on our flank, because Chetwode's Brigade were told to discard their coats which they used to have strapped over their saddle, with a waterproof sheet around, and the Lancers left their lances on the ground and drew swords. We were operating as divisional cavalry, and it was the first time I had seen one of our cavalry brigades since arriving in France.

We were to go on the flank in reserve. Things took place in the space of fifteen minutes. I remember seeing Chetwode ride out at the head of these two fine regiments, scarcely touched with warfare, yet, leaving their lances behind and drawing their swords, they formed squadron column. We could see the Uhlans coming up, from where we took up a position to go in on the flank, should necessity arise. Chetwode's trumpeter always rode a pinto horse—he went out at the head of these two regiments. They had already formed line long before Chetwode formed his line to charge. His brigade were in squadron column; almost; almost, I should think, to within 200 yards of the Uhlans before they formed line. Anyone who saw that charge of Chetwode's will, in my opinion, never see anything finer in their lives. It made us proud that we were cavalymen. Those two regiments charged the Uhlans, and struck them head on, and hardly before the sound of the clash had died away, the trumpeter was sounding troops right about wheel, and they were round and at them. The Germans never got a look in at all. They were just all over them, and that regiment of Uhlans was practically wiped out. Of course, some got away. It was the finest thing that I saw during the war.

\* \* \* \* \*

JUST before this we came through a big town. I think it was Valenciennes. I do not wish to criticize a gallant ally, but French organization for mobilization could not have been one patch on what it was in England. That was a tremendous undertaking for the French compared to the British, but there were reservists drawing their rifles and equipment when the Germans were practically in the town. There was such a conglomeration of refugees—troops carrying their equipment—had not had time to get into their uniforms—running back mixed up with the refugees—when we were retired to take up positions around Le Cateau. It may have been

those were isolated cases of reservists returning from abroad—maybe from England or other countries—and were late in reporting, but, nevertheless, the Germans were there.

Our transport never kept up with us. We fed our horses on bundles we collected from fields, and we were fed by French peasants. Our water buckets were very fine receptacles for a large loaf of French bread and two bottles of wine. Nearly every man in my squadron usually had two bottles of wine in his water bucket.

As we got further back, falling back on what few reserves we had, I think the whole expeditionary force was about 70,000. The whole of the British Army at the outbreak of the war was 350,000, but, at the same time, they were 350,000 of the best trained troops in the world. There is no doubt about that.

Late in September, we arrived on the line of the Marne. I have heard various people and seen in the press lots of times how near the Germans got to Paris. On a milestone just back of us, was shown eleven kilometers to Paris, so they were pretty close.

I washed my shirt in the Marne, the first time since leaving England. The second night we were there, there was a terrific battle going on. We could hear it and wondered what was happening to our left—to the north of the position we held, and the following morning we realized there was no one in front of us at all. The



*. . . Follow that good  
old Western Custom*

**SHOP WITH CONFIDENCE  
at "THE BAY"**

**PHONE M 83 FOR ALL  
DEPARTMENTS**

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

---

enemy which had been battering us, cavalry and mobile infantry, had disappeared. This gunning that we heard was undoubtedly what has been known as the French taxicab army. The army rushed out from Paris and fought a terrific battle on the north flank, and turned the German army that was making a drive on Paris.

I believe it was Le Cateau when we saw General French or shortly after that. I should mention, too, that the day after this successful cavalry charge, the 9th Lancers charged a field battery of German artillery. It was in the early morning, and this battery had put out barbed wire the night before, and the 9th Lancers were practically annihilated. Of course, the cavalry can do nothing when they get in barbed wire.

From the Marne you would have thought that it was a different army going forward. The morale of the troops was still good but continually going in what we termed the wrong direction had had a certain effect on well-trained troops, but, when they started going the other way, the men seemed to pick up when they realized they were going in the right direction.

In the first three days advance from the Marne, my own squadron and the B Squadron cleaned up three hundred prisoners. From the Marne, the next place we got hung up was at the Aisne. In the particular part where we were, it was very hilly country and huge caves were there. We were able to have our horses practically immune from shell fire in these caves which had been used for herding sheep at night. In October, we were withdrawn from that part of the line altogether. I cannot tell you where we entrained or where we got out because we entrained at night, and got out at night further north. The first town of any importance I remember entering was Hazebrook, and when we arrived there we were still doing patrol work and the Germans had only just cleared out of Hazebrook when we arrived. We did not meet with any resistance. They were falling back when we got in touch with them.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE NEXT FIGHT I had with my section was at Bailleul, quite a long way from Hazebrook, but I was not always on patrol. I am going into details so you can see that the section that I am leading is really the same as any other section doing the work of cavalry. With my section, I remember going into Bailleul very well. Some of you undoubtedly know this little town. There is the market square in the centre, the cathedral on one side, and the roads leading from Hazebrook and up towards Dranoutre. We came in on the road from Hazebrook, and there was a troop of German cavalry in the cafe on the corner, and some horses tied up outside when we arrived on the opposite side of the square. It just shows the lack of precaution to guard against being surprised. We were able to dismount when we got to that square and fire point blank at those horses across the square, and the riders rushed out to get on to

their horses, and there were several killed. But there were only five of us there, and there must have been a troop at least of German cavalry, and they just cleared right off, leaving their lances, and went out on the road to Dranoutre.

We had orders to wait for the squadron, and when they came up, I was sent out on a little road you may know down by the cemetery, out on top of a hill towards Neuve Eglise, where there was a little cafe called the Ecklestraate Estaminet. As we approached the top of this hill we saw two horses outside and we knew right away they were not ours, but they were Uhlands' horses. So I said: "Both those blighters are in there." I and Trubshaw dismounted and crept up along the side of the hedge. There was a farm house near, but we were taking no notice of this but were after the horses. There was a window in the cafe about halfway down, and we could look through, and there were two Germans in there, and the woman behind the bar looked very frightened, and was giving them what they were calling for. They were bawling her out, and carrying on as though the owned the place, and we shot them through the window, and kicked their horses loose, and sent them back. I mention this, because when we came back into winter billets we came to the farm right near this Ecklestraate Cafe, and I asked this woman if she remembered two Germans being killed in her cafe. She told me that she and her mother, a very old woman, dragged these two Germans out and buried them. She showed me where they buried the bodies. They were taking no chances.

\* \* \* \* \*

WE WENT ON from there about a mile further on, and my troop sergeant came up with some more men to reinforce us, because there were some German patrols reported this way, to the north, and we went down into Neuve Eglise. At this time there was a cross roads right in the town, and along one side just over the cross roads there were two or three shops. We had two men out at point. I was riding with the sergeant in the body of the patrol. We had a light armoured car with two machine guns. Of course, other patrols were out right and left of us moving in the same direction. When the point arrived at these cross roads, we could see them not very far ahead of us, and they rode right on after looking right and left. When we arrived at this cross roads, we arrived at the same time as a German patrol coming down the other road on our right and all the sergeant could think of was draw swords. We were too close to use them properly and too mixed up. I drew my sword out from behind me, and I had just time enough to smack a fellow in the face with the hilt and knock him off his horse. It was self preservation, and he was killed right there by the horses trampling on him. They beat it for all they were worth, down the road. The armoured car got a couple more.

After this, we occupied Messines, and perhaps some of you are acquainted with what is known as the Messines Ridge. Messines is right up on a hill, with a valley to the south of it. We oc-

cupied Messines until the infantry came up. There were two battalions; I think a battalion of the King's Royal Rifles and a battalion of the King's Own Scottish Borderers. This was on the first of November, and we fell back after these two regiments occupied the town, but we only went back as far as a place called Pettitpoint Farm. On the second of November, we were rushed out before it was really light up into Messines again, and my Squadron Leader told me that we had orders to hold Messines to give these two infantry regiments time to get across the valley, as they had decided that they would have to retire, and take up position on the opposite side.

By the time we arrived there, shots were coming into the town. We left our horses behind a nunnery or monastery and occupied the outer buildings of Messines, and waited for the Germans' coming. It was very open country, and it was very plain to see the German advance. They advanced almost the same as our own people used to. They had the ordinary advance guard out in front and cyclist scouts. The cyclists came peddling along the road first, and we opened fire on them, and delayed them quite a time by causing the vanguard to extend. The main body did not seem to waiver, though we caused them a lot of casualties. For over two hours we were going from house to house, firing 15 rounds rapid, until these two battalions got across the valley. Our Squadron Leader told us no one was to go for the horses until he gave the order. Major Parsons finally gave three shrill blasts on his whistle, and we beat it for our horses. We had been holding what seemed to be the whole German army for two hours. The two battalions had got across the valley before we left the town, and we galloped across that valley with just one casualty. These two battalions stood up in their trenches and cheered when we cleared them, for we had held the Germans up, and given them time to get to their new positions.

\* \* \* \* \*

FROM there we went north. Our division was on the right or south of Ypres. We were then sent up into the salient. I think it was the fifth of November we went up through Ypres, up towards Hooze Wood. In November the Ypres fire brigade were out trying to put out fires caused by German shell fire into the town. We were there in that salient pretty well a month, and when we came back there was no fire brigade left in Ypres.

We fell back after the line had been taken over by the French. The salient was held during that first battle of Ypres by a line of dismounted cavalry. Our horses were tied up in the woods, and the trench I was in was attacked five times in one day; not by new army men, but by Prussian Guards. They got so near to our trench that some of those men pitched over into it when they were killed, and we stood on them to keep out of the mud. And still we held the line, although we were just dismounted cavalry.



When the French took over our line we were drawn back for a rest, and my own squadron went behind our own infantry division. We had been in the trenches quite a long time, and we had not had a change of underclothes since we left England, and this was late in November or the first week in December.

From the Ypres Salient we went down to the Armentieres for a bath, and that was the best treat in my life. Some of you undoubtedly have had experience with these brewery baths. This one in Armentieres had huge vats, and you had to climb up some steps to get up, and in, and the water came just about to your chin. The water was just at the right temperature, and we went in there seven at a time, and an N.C.O. shouting: "Come on the next seven," and it reminded me of sheep dipping. You were only allowed in a certain time. They had shelves around the edge of the vats with soap on them. When we came out we dried, and went into another room, where there was a big fire, so we could keep warm, while our clothes were in the delousing place. It was like a new army going back. We felt different.

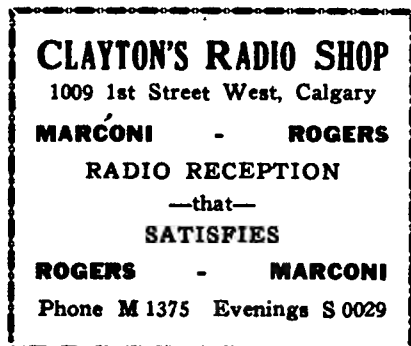
Christmas of 1914, we were back in the outskirts of Bailleul doing ordinary trench work, pushing us in when they wanted a particular line filled up. When there was a lack of reinforcements they used dismounted cavalry. Another particular class of war service was to send out a troop every night up through Dranoutre to within 800 yards of the front line, where we would put our horses in an old building that happened to be near, and do patrol work on

foot between the trenches. At that time there was not a continual line of trenches like there was during the latter part of the war. There would be two or three trenches here and there, and we had to patrol the dead ground between and report to our divisional headquarters.

In the spring of 1915 evidently the supreme command decided there would be no more use for cavalry as divisional cavalry, so we joined up with the Cavalry Corps. We went behind the lines, and in April or May, as you know, was the first gas attack. The first



**7up**  
**A COOLER OFF**  
Polar Aerated Water Wks. Ltd.



**CLAYTON'S RADIO SHOP**  
1009 1st Street West, Calgary  
**MARCONI - ROGERS**  
**RADIO RECEPTION**  
—that—  
**SATISFIES**  
**ROGERS - MARCONI**  
Phone M 1375 Evenings S 0029

gas attack was on a French territorial brigade and a Belgian regiment, just where the French and Belgian lines joined, and of course, this line gave way, and the cavalry was sent up to re-establish it. We went into that part of the line, where we did listening patrol in a boat on the water between ours and the German trenches.

\* \* \* \* \*

AFTER establishing the line there, we came back to Vlamertinge, and we thought we were going back to our billets but we were told to take our kits and our mess tins and leave a guard with the horses, and we went up to Hooze and took part in the Second Battle of Ypres as infantry. There is no doubt about it, that during the Second Battle of Ypres, it claimed the flower of the British Cavalry. They took our horses back, and we never saw them until we got back. Of my own squadron, all that was left got into one motor bus to go back after that second battle. We had been in one part of the line, on the Zonnebeek road and the only man now left of my original section was this man Trubshaw.

When mobilization first took place all the reservists of our regiment who were abroad were taken into the Life Guards, and you would find a tall fellow with a chap about that high, and these were called Life Guards. They were up in the Salient the same time we were with the Cavalry Corps and these Life Guards and the 10th Hussars had been driven out of their trenches, and they sent us up to re-establish this line. We fought forwards and backwards early in the day. First we had it, then the Germans would take it, and at night they really did not know who really had this trench. I was told to take my section or patrol up the Zonnebeek Road and see if this trench was occupied by our people or the Germans, and another patrol was sent out further south on the same mission. Trubshaw was still there (or should have been). When I came to get my section together, Trubshaw was missing. After searching around and not finding him, we set out a man short. The first place we had to look at was some farm buildings just behind the original line. I thought we should look through these buildings which were still standing, although, of course, they had been knocked about quite a bit with shell fire. We crept up and listened and I could hear somebody. The first thing I heard was "Stand still, you bleeder." There was Trubshaw trying to milk a poor old cow into his mess tin. We took him with us, after he drank what milk he had been able to squeeze out.

We found that the trench was only occupied by a patrol or a post, comprised of four or five Germans, whom we were able to dispose of, and we went back to report the trench is all clear.

\* \* \* \* \*

AT THIS TIME we had lost two fighting C. O's. in my regiment, and the commanding officer was Major Franks. I believe he is the uncle of a gentleman I met here tonight, and he was a very popular officer—he was quite a small man, typical cavalryman. He

gave orders that we were to occupy this trench right away. At once, we went up the Zonnebeck Road and occupied the trench, and were put to work all night building it up to almost the same pitch as it was before the attacks that had taken place the day before. Just before daybreak, we were ordered to withdraw into the ditch along the road and we started to dig in again. It was only about an hour to go to daybreak, and we had to dig in about 100 yards behind the original trench before it got light. Then we saw the idea. You should have seen those fellows dig; we certainly made fast time. As soon as it got light enough, the enemy certainly blew that trench to pieces again.

We had orders not to fire until we got a real target. The Germans came over in two lines in full view of us, as the country was quite open there. This trench having been blown to pieces, they thought they had nothing to do. They had no idea we had evacuated. Instead, they met a terrific fire, when we opened up about 100 yards behind it, and those two lines were simply mowed down. My own Squadron Leader, Major Parsons, got the D.S.O. in that fight. That was one of the little things that happened that you noticed showed good thinking, especially when we built up that trench like new, and withdrew, although we were grouching when we had to dig in again.

We were sent up then to reinforce the front line, and it was during this battle we lost so many casualties, and I had a little wound and a belly full of gas. We went back to the billets where our horses had been taken and we were treated with a double dose of number nines to clear out the gas.

After the Second Battle of Ypres, we did practically nothing with regard to actual fighting. We were more or less re-organized, and got out a lot of new recruits from England, and did a lot of cavalry training behind the lines. We used to go up every once in a while for digging support trenches during June and July, 1915. We went up with the idea of going into the Battle of Loos in September, 1915, but we did not get into it as a unit of cavalry, but did the clearing up afterwards. We were able to rout out quite a few prisoners, and did quite a lot of burying of the dead.

After the Battle of Loos, we went back north of Boulogne, into winter billets. They used to take us up to do regular trench tours, we went up by train and walked the remainder. We then found out the value of bombs, and we did quite a lot of training in bomb throwing behind the lines. My last term of trench warfare with the cavalry, was at the Hohenzollern Redoubt, and that is where I lost Trubshaw. There he got practically disembowelled with a bomb which had been thrown into the trench, and the last thing he said was, "Look what the bleeders have done to me now" and with that he collapsed.

After that I was given a commission in the King's Royal Rifles as a signalling officer. Soon after receiving my commission, I went

to a lecture by the late Sir Henry Wilson, who was murdered in London by Sein Feiners after the war. He commanded the IV. Corps. I have always remembered his remarks. He said: "Now then, my young fellows, and what is going to be the ruling factor in this war? We can look back to the Boer War, and we can see that the chief thing in forcing a successful conclusion was the mounted infantry. Take the Russo-Japanese War, where I think the ruling factor was machine guns. What is going to be the ruling factor of this war? Give me your opinion." Of course, some said the advance being made in machine guns, others said in artillery, others in bombs, others aircraft. He said: "You are all wrong. The ruling factor in this war is going to be saluting." Of course, we heard a little titter going around. He said: "By saluting I mean the highest form of discipline, and only discipline will win this war."

Those words have always remained with me, showing that whatever part of the British forces you belonged to, you must have discipline. And if discipline was considered the ruling factor in the last war, it is going to be doubly so in the next.

**TO MEMBERS OF THE ALBERTA MILITARY  
INSTITUTE**

Members of the Institute are indebted to the various firms who have purchased advertising space in this Journal and thereby made its publication possible.

IF EACH MEMBER WILL ENDEAVOUR TO EXTEND HIS PATRONAGE, IN WHOLE OR IN PART, DURING THIS YEAR, TO THOSE FIRMS ADVERTISING AND MENTION THE INSTITUTE WHEN SO DOING, THE VALUE OF THE JOURNAL AS AN ADVERTISING MEDIUM WILL BE ESTABLISHED.

The Institute earnestly solicits your support for those firms who have used this Journal as an advertising medium.

## Recent Books

*Received by Major C. A. Lyndon*

---

**"Official History, Canadian Forces in the Great War"**—Colonel A. Fortescue Duguid. (The King's Printer, Ottawa).

OF OUTSTANDING interest to readers of the Journal was the publication during the past year of the first volume of the Official History of the Canadian Expeditionary Forces in the 1914 to 1918 conflict. A reading of the volume indicates that the interest is going to be heightened materially as it becomes known how thoroughly and excellent a job the official historian, Colonel A. Fortescue Duguid, has done. The standard set in this initial effort augurs well for the complete record which is to be passed to history of our first great Canadian effort in a world conflict.

One would like to spend a great deal of time and space reviewing this chronicle, so memorable are the activities and events recorded in it, and so thoroughly does it succeed in recalling and preserving the atmosphere of the first year of the War. Unfortunately that space is not available here. Mention must be made, though, of the references to the opening days of the conflict and to the haze of remoteness which clothed Canadian opinion and action. It was a new experience for a people who knew little of war, and, we might say very little of preparation for war. It was truly a baptism of fire for the nation, and one watches the gradual crystallization from the fogs of uncertainty, of a national sentiment and of a new insight into the course ahead. Canadian readers, military and civilian alike, will compare with interest the picture set down by Colonel Duguid and the picture carried by themselves since those days.

The subject matter of this first volume recalls, too, many a scene of industry and effort on a scale new to Canadian military organizations, as well as scenes of enthusiasm, of heartache, of disillusionment, of anticipation, and, towards the end of that first year, scenes of warfare from which was to emerge the new Canadian Army and a new Canadian vision of nationhood. Told in its pages is the story of the mobilization of the First Division at Valcartier Camp, of its initial training there and of its dispatch to England on October 3rd, 1914. Here is the story again of Salisbury mud, of the differences over Ross rifles, and other differences over trenching tools, as well as the record of the continuous efforts to adjust differences of opinion between senior British and Canadian officers and Ministers over the manner of using the Canadian force and over the officers who were to command its parts. These stories are well recorded, a guide for the nation today should the problems in similar form and lesser degree again arise.

The opening volume records the entry of the first Canadian unit, the P.P.C.L.I., into the line, as a part of the 27th, British Division, on January 6th, 1915, and of the entry of the first units of the First Canadian Division into the front line on March 1st of the same year. There follows then the records of actions, and the stories built up around areas, all well known to most of us. Among these are the early actions in the Ypres Salient, the first gas attack on the 22nd of April, 1915, the Battle of St. Julien and the historic actions at Festubert, Givenchy and Hill 63. Woven into the story at this same time, a splendid back-drop for these trying periods and splendid achievements, is the record of the formation of the 2nd Canadian Division and of its entry into the War Zone.

The completion of this first volume of the Official History marks an epoch in the history of the Dominion, and the painstaking manner in which the record has been assembled provides a volume which should be required reading for Canadian adults. For many thousands it will be read avidly without any requirement, and commended for both its story and the manner of its telling.

\* \* \* \* \*

"Insanity Fair"—Douglas Reed. (Toronto: Nelson's).

THIS near-brilliant (one would call it brilliant but for the fact that no effort has been made by its author to attempt brilliance by polishing up his facts) record and picture of modern European affairs should be read by every Canadian who interests himself in any degree in the trend of events on the far side of the Atlantic. For a thorough analysis of those events, as well as an interpretation of the causes of them, no finer work has been given us. The author, a foreign correspondent for British journals has, during his fifteen years on continental assignments with their direct contact with the leading personalities and happenings of the period, built up a background that permits a well-balanced view of the world panorama, and this is the sort of view he provides in "Insanity Fair".

Mr. Reed covers the Central European vista with commendable thoroughness in his volume, in a style somewhat unique. Convinced that the whirl of international events has become a sort of mad circus, he picks out the events that have stood out in these events during the post war period and tells the story of each one in turn. It will be a reader of unusually vigorous argumentative ability who will maintain after the reading of his book that the circus idea is far astray. There is the story of the rise of Nazidom, of the famous, or infamous, burning of the Reichstag and of the trial that followed it and that helped to eradicate the enemies of Naziism; the purges of the new Reich, the occupation of the Rhineland, the absorption of Austria, the growth of the Soviet, and its troubles, and around all this the efforts of the other elements of the European scene to apply the brakes to the headlong plunge into the abyss of a new world cataclysm.

The book becomes in the end a bitter denouement of the present Hitler regime—though not necessarily of the German people. Douglas Reed, who admits a warmth of heart for the every-day German to the extent of a willingness to trade his British heritage for a German one (less the militaristic trappings) makes no secret of his well-based and long-considered opinion that the Nazi regime intends to war on Britain regardless of our moves to placate them.—Only a change within Germany can prevent a clash between us. One feels that the author's sympathy with that other side of Germany and her people accounts for the depth of his feeling against the present regime.

\* \* \* \* \*

**"Problems in Canadian Unity"**—Canadian Institute On Economics and Politics. (Toronto: Nelson's).

THE little phrase "Canadian Unity" has become one of such frequent usage in the everyday speech of every sort of Canadian, and in every corner of the Dominion that one is not surprised to find the Institute On Economics And Politics making it the theme of their last Annual Conference, held at Lake Couchiching during August, 1938. This small volume contains the addresses of the leading contributors at the conference and becomes, as a result, a handbook on the problems which bear on our national unity or lack of unity.

The contributors to the pages of this volume have spoken with a candor that is as essential as it is commendable if this particular problem is to be solved in any degree whatever, and to that candor they have added a freedom of rancor that also deserves commendation. A glance at the men who participate in the review of our national structure will provide some indication of the merit of the book. J. B. McGeachy of the Winnipeg Free Press discusses the presentations of the provinces before the Rowell Commission; Roger Ouimet takes up the question of "Preservation of The French-Canadian Culture Within Confederation"; Professor G. F. Curtiss of Dalhousie University deals with "Stresses and Strains of Confederation" while some of our leading agriculturists, including Honorable J. G. Taggart of Saskatchewan expresses the view of Agricultural Canada on the Confederacy, and Professor Finkelman of Toronto University leads a discussion on the position of labor and its unions in the federation picture.

There are places where some of us will voice exception to the views expressed—which is not surprising if it is a fact that we have some disunity, as that lack of harmony is primarily due to difference of view—but despite this, or perhaps because of it, this is just the sort of study which should help to alleviate the ills of Confederation. The National Council of the Y.M.C.A. is to be commended for its part in the publication of the volume.

\* \* \* \* \*

**"South of Hitler"**—M. W. Fodor. (Toronto: Nelson's).

**T**HERE was a time, in the still vivid past, when the worries of a worried world lay west of Hitler. Today they lie, primarily, south, along the lower reaches of the Danube, the upper reaches of the Adriatic and the heart of the Balkans, for here it now appears is where the grandiose dreams of this modern "Little Corporal" will bloom into world domination or fade into the realm of other like dreams. This revised volume by M. W. Fodor, newsman who hailed from old Hungary and whose life work has been to tell the outside world of happenings in south-central Europe, provides a well-rounded picture of the nations which make up this area south of Hitler, of their peoples, their histories and of the likely happenings when the power of the Nazi swastika begins to spread in their direction.

"South of Hitler" is particularly welcome at this time because its finest pictures are of those parts of Europe which dominate today's news—Hungary, Roumania, Poland, the Balkan Entente and Turkey, and recently dismembered Czechoslovakia. These countries, the men who made them and today direct them are covered with a thoroughness and clarity that can come only from a first hand knowledge born of long acquaintance. Journal readers will find Mr. Fodor both authoritative and interesting.

\* \* \* \* \*

**"Britain and the Dictators"**—R. W. Seton-Watson. (Toronto: Mac-Millans).

**A** SPLENDID VOLUME on the relationships of Britain and the dictator states, and of the characteristics, strengths and weaknesses of each is this one by Professor Seton-Watson of the chair of Central European History at London University. Journal readers who would like to assess recent happenings, back to the Versailles Conferences and Treaties and the world-disturbing events which have followed them, will find no finer aid than this one.

The author deals first with the relations existing between Britain and the leading dictator nations—Germany, Russia and Italy, and discusses the developments in all these states which have had a bearing on the trend of world events. This picture he rounds out by bringing in the small states which border these more impressive domains, sketching in the part that each plays in relation to its greater neighbor. The whole picture is presented in as objective a manner as possible, free of any confusing rancor, with a view to portraying facts rather than justifying past events.

The volume is brought up to the moment by chapters on the Austrian anschluss and the Spanish conflict.

\* \* \* \* \*



**"Japan in China"**—T. A. Bisson. (Toronto: MacMillans).

**A**MONG a host of books on the Sino-Japanese question this one by a man who has ten years' association with both Chinese and Japanese affairs in the Far East stands out in relief. It stands a splendid chance of becoming one of the permanent volumes on the topic.

Mr. Bisson pictures first the China of early 1937, the China upon which broke the storm of Japanese aggression, a China enjoying the first real internal peace in many generations, and a China achieving the first real steps toward national unity. He goes back beyond this, then, and shows the steps by which the two neighbors across the Pacific had reached their respective positions at the time they decided to war—China by crushing or by reforming the elements that had caused disunity, Japan by ever-increasing aggression against her neighbor. One is amazed at the tenacity and audacity with which this policy of encroachment was followed from the time of the Manchukuoan incident onward, as well at the repeated attempts of the Japanese authorities to assure the world that nothing but friendship for the Chinese was envisioned. The author writes understandingly and authoritatively on this phase of the Far Eastern problem and his writing is worth the reading. Consideration of the Japanese national structure completes the story.

## ROYALITE OIL COMPANY

LIMITED

*A Progressive Factor in Turner Valley  
Development Since 1921*

J. H. McLEOD, President

T. E. BURNS, Sec.-Treasurer

Head Offices:

606 SECOND STREET WEST, CALGARY, ALBERTA

Transfer Agents:

The Toronto & Western Trusts Co. Ltd., Toronto, Ont.  
Vancouver, B.C.

Transfers also made at the Head Office of the Company

## Work of the Canadian Legion

*By W. Bullard*

*President, Calgary Branch, Canadian Legion, B.E.S.L.*

---

AS PRESIDENT of the Calgary branch of the Canadian Legion, B.E.S.L., I welcome this opportunity to comment briefly on the work of the Canadian Legion on behalf of ex-service men. Last year my predecessor, Mr. Alex Walker, gave you a report of our Dominion convention with particular reference to the resolutions passed. Now I propose outlining the results of our presentations to the Dominion Government.

Possibly the most far-reaching success is the provision made for free medical treatment of those of our comrades who served in France and are unable to pay doctor's and hospital bills. There are various classes of treatment in the military hospitals but it might clarify the situation if I outlined the two classes that have bearing on the subject of free medical treatment. These are known as Class 2 and Class 18. The regulations covering Class 2 are briefly: That a pensioner is entitled to treatment in any hospital maintained by the Department. The treatment can only be given in a hospital or institution under the control of the Department of Pensions and National Health, or one with which they have a contract. In Alberta, it applies only to the University Hospital, in Edmonton, and the Colonel Belcher Hospital in Calgary. This treatment is only given where the man is unable to pay for it himself. He has to make an affidavit to this effect. The man must pay his own transportation from his home to the hospital and, before he is accepted, except in extreme emergencies, he must first make application to the Department.

This briefly covers the regulations for Class 2 except that there has now been an amendment to this class whereby dental treatment, that is, repairs to dentures, removal of teeth and the supplying of new dentures and prosthetic appliances can be given where, in the opinion of the medical officers, it is necessary. Or, in plain words, the Act provides that a man can be given a new set of dentures.

\* \* \* \* \*

A new departure altogether has been made under what is known as Class 18.

Under this legislation any man who saw service and is a former member of the forces, not otherwise qualified for treatment, but who in the opinion of the Department saw meritorious service in a theatre of actual war is entitled to treatment the same as under Class 2. Before he can be accepted, he must first write asking for the authority of the Department and, except in cases of extreme emergency,

the application has to be approved by the Head Office of the Department of Pensions and National Health, in Ottawa. He must pay his own transportation to the nearest departmental hospital. (The treatment is only given where in the opinion of the Medical Officer of the Department, it is necessary.) After treatment has been completed, if the man is destitute, transportation may be granted him back to his home. Dental and prosthetic appliances can, also, be given under this class. It must be understood that the dental treatment does not include repairs or replacements, if they have once been granted by the Department. Dental treatment is only granted once. Under this class, a man must make an affidavit that he is unable to pay for the treatment himself before it can be granted.

The decision of eligibility is made by the Department and each case must be decided on its own individual merits. There is no absolute standard because in the case of a man who is, for instance, a farmer, the man earning a salary and the man on relief, the situation is different and would have to be considered separately.

Under the new legislation, any man who saw service of a meritorious nature, that is, service in the line or on any active front, is entitled to treatment, but, as in the case of Class 2, he must first write asking for the authority of the Department and must provide his own transportation to the nearest hospital maintained by the Department. Neither of these classes is granted treatment for what are called terminal cases; that is, treatment is not provided for a mental condition, epilepsy, tuberculosis, diabetes, cancer, etc., except where the treatment will be of sufficient value to place the man back again in a position where he can earn his living. Then it will only be granted when the man has first made an affidavit to the effect that he cannot afford to pay for it himself.

Extraction of teeth may be granted under both these Classes and dentures may be supplied, repaired and re-set but no subsequent repairs made. After discharge, reasonable convalescent care may be undertaken in the Out-patient Clinic of the Department

The question of treatment has been brought up at every Dominion convention since the inception of the organization. While the regulations are not quite all that we had hoped for, they will take care of a large number of men, who otherwise would not have been cared for.

Hon. C. G. Power, Minister of Pensions and National Health, should receive the thanks of all returned men for granting to some extent hospitalization and treatment facilities for non-pensioners.

This, I believe, covers the new regulations. It must, however, be distinctly understood that this treatment is not given except where the ex-service man is unable to afford it himself and particularly, where his salary or income exceeds the amount that would be allowed as Pay and Allowances, were he a pensioner, while undergoing treatment.

\* \* \* \* \*

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

We have also been able to get a little improvement for our Imperial comrades. These regulations were extended in March, 1938, to take under Class 2 all Imperial pensioners, who were resident in Canada at the time of their enlistment and who served with the Imperial forces. It does not, however, take care of Imperial soldiers unless they were resident in Canada prior to their enlistment.

Unfortunately, under the new class, which is called Class 18, provision has not yet been made to take care of men, who although pre-war residents of Canada served in the Imperial forces. We believe this must have been an oversight as the Minister only last year included the pensioners in Class 2 treatment and the Canadian Legion intends to press for the admission of Imperial ex-service men under this Class and particularly those who were resident and domiciled in Canada upon the outbreak of war.

There is before Parliament at the present time some amendments to The Pension Act. These have not been passed by the House but have received the recommendation of the Minister, and I feel confident they will be accepted by Parliament.

I might say here that the Canadian Legion, particularly at the convention in Fort William, were very dissatisfied with the Pension appeal court.

For the year ended March, 1938, only two applicants were given favourable decisions out of ninety-four appeals. The Canadian Pension Commission appealed one hundred and thirteen favourable decisions and five of these were granted against the appeal.

There were twelve decisions in favour of the applicant out of over two thousand and seventeen who appealed from the quorum's decision.

You will, therefore, see that twenty-two people were denied pension after it had been granted them by either the quorum or tribunal and fourteen who obtained favourable decisions after appeal.

The court, in the opinion of the Canadian Legion, has been of very little benefit to returned men and we are pleased to know that it is now to be entirely abolished as from July of this year.

The amendments provide that the present hearing by quorum of the pension commission will be discontinued and pension commissioners will hear cases as a travelling appeal court so that the applicant can be present at the hearing. They will be given, as before, the right to bring in their own witnesses including doctors, the expenses of which will be paid by the Department. They will, also, be given the privilege of being represented by the pensions advocate. If they wish, they can be represented by other persons at their own expense.

## **THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL**

---

The effect of this will be that when a pension has been granted by the travelling commission, there will be no appeal on either side and, in consequence, the applicant will know as soon as the decision is given whether he is to be given pension or not, instead as at present, the decision being reviewed by a reviewing officer and in a number of cases appeals laid and a long wait before the applicant gets a definite decision.

This in the opinion of the Canadian Legion is a move in the right direction and should result in the clearing up of a number of appeals, which have been pending for some considerable time.

\* \* \* \* \*

I cannot resist the opportunity of referring to what we consider the most beneficial legislation passed in the interest of ex-service men; that is, the War Veterans' Allowance. Space will not permit me to go into the details as to qualifications for this but in the main it is an allowance for those who had service and are in need. At present there are approximately 15,000 men receiving this benefit in the Dominion and out of this number well over 5,000 are under sixty years, indicating an extension that includes quite a large number with an economic disability. In Calgary we have approximately 470 recipients, about 130 of these being added during the past six months. This indicates that many of our former comrades have been taken off the bread line and given a moderate form of security in their time of need.

From the local press you will gather that the various ex-service men's organizations have united in order that the visit of Their Majesties to Calgary will work out successfully. Might I request the members of your organization to watch the local papers and give us all the assistance possible as the occasion arises in this work.

In conclusion, might I request the members of your Institute to lend what assistance they can in our efforts along the line of improving conditions for our former comrades. The Canadian Legion has worked hard and spent considerable money for this purpose and I can assure you we would welcome all the support we can get as the work would be easier if our organization were stronger and we believe that our principles and policy have stood the test of time and are as necessary as they were when our organization was formed.

### **Principles and Policy of The Canadian Legion**

"The Legion shall be democratic and non-sectarian, and shall not be affiliated to, or connected, directly or indirectly, with any political party or organization.

"It shall stand for loyalty to the reigning Sovereign, Canada and the Empire, for maintenance of the foundation principles of the British Constitution, for the development of a national and united

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

spirit and for ordered government in Canada, and, while striving for peace, goodwill and friendship among all nations, will advocate the maintenance by Canada of adequate and efficient forces on land and sea and in the air, for the defence of our country and for the discharge of those obligations which rest upon us by virtue of our partnership in the British Empire.

"It shall stand for strong and united comradeship among all those who have served in His Majesty's forces throughout the Empire, so that neither their rights, their duties nor their interests shall be forgotten, and so that their welfare, and that of the dependents of the disabled and the fallen may be safeguarded."



HAVOLINE OIL  
TEXACO MOTOR OIL  
TEXACO VALOR OIL  
MARPAK GREASE

TEXACO ETHYL  
TEXACO FIRE CHIEF  
TURNER VALLEY GAS  
TRACTOR DISTILLATE

### THE TEXAS COMPANY OF CANADA LIMITED

Marketers of Texaco Petroleum Products, together with a full line of Oils and Grease, invite your inspection and patronage at the TEXACO SERVICE STATION in your vicinity.



**Campbell & Laybourne**

Distributors



Phone M 7709

9th Avenue and 7th Street E.

## The Annual General Meeting

---

THE ANNUAL MEETING of the Institute was held in the Garrison Officers' Mess, Calgary, on Tuesday, January 24th, 1939. The meeting opened at 8.30 p.m. The President, Col. H. C. A. Hervey, V.D., occupied the chair. The following members were present:—

Major J. U. Acton, Capt. W. H. Baker, Lieut. Alex Ballachey, Major J. Begg, Lieut. J. F. Bingham, Lieut. T. E. Burns, Lieut. F. J. Butler, Lieut. H. J. Byrnes, Major L. H. Chapman, Lieut. T. W. Collinge, Capt. J. H. Crichton, Col. D. G. Cunningham, M.C., V.D.; Major A. J. Davis, Col. N. D. Dingle, Capt. P. E. Dowler, 2nd Lieut. W. W. Evans, Lieut. E. M. Findlay, Capt. H. G. S. Franks, M.C.; 2nd Lieut. J. P. Gordon, M.M.; Major P. V. Harcourt, D.C.M.; Major H. N. Heal, Col. H. C. A. Hervey, V.D.; Major Jas. Hogarth, Lieut. E. W. Ilott, Lieut. R. Jackson, Capt. F. H. Johnson, M.C.; Lt.-Col. A. C. Cooper Johnston, M.C., V.D.; Major V. R. Jones, Lt.-Col. W. K. Iull, Lieut. F. H. Kelley, Capt. K. G. Kendall, Hon. Major G. W. Kerby, E.D.; Col. E. R. Knight, V.D.; Capt. W. L. Lane, Lieut. E. W. Lasher, Capt. T. W. Laybourne, D.C.M.; Lieut. W. G. Ledingham, Major P. P. Littlewood, V.D.; Major K. B. Lockett, Capt. G. E. Lockwood, Lieut. R. H. Matthews, Lieut. S. I. Miller, Capt. R. E. A. Moreton, Lieut. M. E. Meers, Lieut. G. L. MacDougall, Major G. D. C. McEwen, Major Wm. McIntosh, Lt.-Col. Roy Nash, Capt. E. B. Newcombe, Capt. H. G. Nolan, M.C.; 2nd Lieut. C. Orr, Major E. H. Parsons, Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C.; Capt. H. L. Pease, Capt. G. Z. Pinder, M.C.; Capt. G. Gidley Pook, Major Gordon S. Purdy, M.M.; Capt. R. M. Quigley, Capt. R. Richmond, M.C.; Lieut. L. R. Riddell, Lt.-Col. W. B. Robbins, Lieut. M. H. Robinson, Lieut. J. V. Rose, Lt.-Com. I. H. Rowlands, Lt.-Col. I. Fred Scott, Capt. D. C. Sinclair, Capt. T. A. Skinner, Major W. G. Stunden, Major I. M. Taylor, Lt.-Col. R. J. Thomson, Lt.-Col. D. H. Tomlinson, M.B.E., V.D.; Lieut. H. Ward, Lieut. D. J. Watson, Major S. M. Welsh, Lieut. J. B. Whiteoak, Capt. A. G. Wilson, Capt. D. H. Woodside, Major H. E. Wright, Major T. L. Wright, M.C.

Non-Resident—Lieut. R. D. Sutherland.

### Minutes of Last Annual Meeting

The Minutes of the last Annual Meeting, held in the Garrison Officers' Mess, on Friday, 28th January, 1938, having been printed in the Annual Journal, it was moved by Col. N. D. Dingle, seconded by Major K. B. Lockett, that the Minutes be taken as read. Carried.

### Report of the President

The President presented the following report for the year 1938, as follows:—

Brigadier Pearkes and Gentlemen:—

It is my privilege to present to you, on behalf of the Directors, a report of the activities of the Institute for 1938.

### Membership

Our membership is in a satisfactory condition. There has been an increase of eight resident members, a decrease of six non-resident members. This, with an additional Life Member, makes a total increase of three. Receipts from membership are in excess of last year. The membership at present is as follows:—

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Life Members .....         | 5   |
| Honorary Members .....     | 3   |
| Resident Members .....     | 342 |
| Non-Resident Members ..... | 145 |
| Red Deer Branch .....      | 24  |
| <hr/>                      |     |
| Total .....                | 519 |

Your Directors welcome to the District Lt.-Col. M. K. Greene, who has taken over the duties of A.A. & Q.M.G., and Major H. A. Young, who succeeded Major G. R. Bradbrooke, M.C., as G.S.O. We trust that their stay in Calgary may prove to be a very happy one.

Your Directors, regretting the departure of our Vice-President, Lieut.-Colonel C. W. Devey, Commanding Officer of the L.S.H. (R.C.), congratulate him and wish him every success in his new appointment at Kingston, Ontario, as A.A. & Q.M.G., M.D. No. 3.

### Red Deer Branch

Reports from the Red Deed branch indicate that, although small in numbers, it is an active branch and hopes to carry on with greater success in the future.

### Deaths

It is with deep regret that we record the deaths of the following members of the Institute during 1938.—

Lieut. L. A. Walsh.  
Lt.-Col. A. E. C. MacDonell.  
Lt.-Col. W. A. Lyndon.



## **THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL**

---

### **Meetings**

There were thirteen evening meetings held during the year, in addition to the New Year's Reception, Annual Meeting, Vimy Dinner, and the Armistice Ball.

On the evening of December 9th a Ladies' Night was held, at which Mr. S. R. Vallance displayed a large number of lantern slides, in color, of scenes taken by himself in the Rockies last summer. It proved to be a most enjoyable evening and it is suggested that similar meetings be arranged in the future.

### **Vimy Dinner**

The Vimy Dinner was held at the Palliser Hotel on the evening of April 9th with a larger attendance than last year. The address by Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C., was most interesting and instructive. Your Directors urge the members to lend greater support by their attendance, and that of their friends, so that this event may be successfully continued.

### **Armistice Ball**

The Armistice Ball was held at the Palliser Hotel on the evening of November 10th, the attendance being slightly less than that in 1937.

Your Directors trust that a full discussion regarding the Ball will take place this evening. A possible change of name and date might popularize the event to a greater extent.

### **Cadet Corps**

A separate report on The Alberta Military Institute Cadet Corps will be presented to you this evening. The Corps appears to be very popular and it has been found necessary to limit the enrollment to 100 with a minimum age limit of 14 years. The Annual Camp of the Corps was held at Sylvan Lake from July 17th to July 25th, 1938. The Officers in charge were Major D. J. McDougall and Lieut. H. Ward. Sixty-six cadets attended the camp and from my observation spent a most instructive and enjoyable week. I wish to congratulate the Cadets and their Instructors on the very excellent display given by them at their Annual Inspection held in the Armouries last June.

### **C.O.T.C. Scholarship**

The Institute donated a Scholarship of fifty dollars to the winner of the Class "B" Certificate of the University of Alberta C.O.T.C., which was awarded to Sergeant R. E. Bell; the presentation taking place at the University during the fall term.

### **Library**

Lieut. L. E. Lick kindly consented to undertake the duties of Honorary Librarian. The thanks of the Institute are extended to that gentleman for his very efficient and valuable services.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

After the completion of the new quarters, now occupied by the Library, the Garrison Officers' Mess Committee requested your Directors to furnish the room, which we were pleased to do and which action was endorsed by members at a recent meeting. The library and furnishings are carried as part of the Institute's assets.

### **Annual Journal**

The Annual Journal containing a transcript of the lectures delivered during 1937 and proceedings of the last Annual Meeting was published under the editorship of Major A. C. Ballantine, to whom the Institute is indebted for the excellent manner with which he completed his task. The Institute is also grateful to Lieut. M. H. Robinson for the splendid results he obtained as Advertising Manager, and to Lieut. S. L. Miller for his services as Business Manager.

Through their combined efforts the Journal was placed in the hands of all members at a most reasonable cost.

It is gratifying to report that complimentary messages have been received on that publication from many members, especially those from outside points.

The Annual Journal for the past year will be issued in due course and sent to all members.

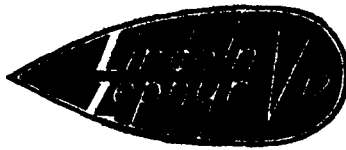
### **Garrison Officers' Mess**

We wish to express our appreciation to the President and Members of the Garrison Officers' Mess Committee for their very cordial co-operation during the past year. Your Directors continued the same arrangements as have been in force for some years, for the use of the Mess and refreshments at meetings. A recommendation will be submitted to you this evening that those arrangements be continued if found satisfactory by the Mess Committee.

## **MACLIN MOTORS LIMITED**



**MURRAY S**



**CALGARY DEALERS**

### **Recommendations**

A number of recommendations will be placed before you this evening. Two amendments to the Constitution will also be submitted for your consideration.

On behalf of the Institute I wish to convey to Brigadier Pearkes our appreciation for the interest he has shown in the affairs of our organization and the very valuable assistance he has rendered to your Directors.

Your Directors have been untiring in their efforts to further the interests of the Institute and have been very faithful in their attendance at Directors' Meetings.

The records and accounts of the Institute have been kept in an excellent manner by your Honorary Secretary, Major A. J. Davis, and your Treasurer, Lieut. S. L. Miller.

I should like to take this opportunity to thank publicly all these gentlemen for their loyalty and co-operation during the past year. My living, as I do, out of the city, entailed far greater efforts on their part than ever before, especially in connection with the Vimy Dinner and Armistice Ball. This added burden was cheerfully undertaken by all members of the Directorate, for which I offer my sincere thanks.

I thank you for the great honour you bestowed on me in electing me your President for 1938. That honour shall ever remain one of my proudest memories.

In conclusion, I ask you to render the same co-operation in the future that you have given in the past, so that my successor and his board may enjoy a successful and prosperous 1939. I thank you all.

Respectfully submitted,

H. C. A. HERVEY, Colonel, President.

Moved by Col. E. R. Knight, V.D., seconded by Major H. F. Wright, that the Report of the President be adopted and that Col. H. C. A. Hervey, V.D., be tendered a hearty vote of thanks for his leadership during the year. Carried.

### **Auditor's Report**

The report of the Auditor, Lieut. F. J. Butler, certifying that all books, accounts, securities, etc., of the Institute had been examined and found to be correct, was read by the Secretary.

Moved by Capt. G. R. Bradbrooke, M.C., seconded by Lieut. R. Jackson, that the Report of the Auditor be adopted. Carried.

### **Annual Financial Statement**

The financial statement was reviewed by the Treasurer, Lieut. S. L. Miller, who outlined the various sources of revenue and submitted explanations of the disbursements and other financial matters of the Institute. In accordance with the Constitution and By-Laws a copy of the financial statement has been mailed to all members.

Moved by Lt.-Com. J. H. Rowlands, seconded by Lieut. W. G. Ledingham, that the financial statement and report be adopted. Approved.

### **Report of Librarian**

The report of the Librarian, Lieut. L. E. Lick, was read by the Secretary in which he advised new books had been secured, others were on order and also drawing attention to the new quarters for the Library which the Institute had recently very comfortably furnished.

In the Librarian's report an appeal was made for further donations of suitable books so that the Institute's Library may be more rapidly and more extensively built up than is possible without materially increasing the sum annually provided for purchases.

The Directors recommended that a sum not in excess of \$100.00 be authorized for Library purposes for 1939.

Moved by Major P. P. Littlewood, V.D., seconded by Col. N. D. Dingle, that the report be adopted, that a sum not exceeding \$100.00 be authorized as recommended by the Directors and that the thanks of the Institute be tendered to Lieut. Lick for his work with the Library. Approved.

### **Report of the Alberta Military Institute Cadet Corps**

Lieut.-Col. E. R. Selby, D.S.O., in presenting the annual report on the activities of the Alberta Military Institute Cadet Corps expressed thanks to Lieut. H. Ward, the Commanding Officer of the Corps, and congratulations to Major D. J. McDougall for his work as supervisor, and to Capt. P. E. Dowler, Lieut. E. M. Findlay and Permanent Force Instructors who ably assisted in that work. The report stated the Corps had attained a remarkably high state of efficiency, its popularity was becoming more pronounced from day to day and had an enrolment of nearly its full quota of one hundred cadets.

In order to minimize the annual camp expenses a request was submitted to members to provide cars for transporting the cadets. (The camp will probably be held in early July and it is trusted members who find it convenient to assist in conveying the cadets, will communicate with the Secretary of the Institute).

## **THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL**

---

The Directors recommended that the sum of \$250.00 be authorized for 1939, to be expended on behalf of the Cadet Corps at the discretion of the Directors, and that any rebate from the Department of National Defence for the 1938 camp be made available for the 1939 camp expenses.

Moved by Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C., seconded by Major H. E. Wright, that the report be adopted, the above sum be authorized and a vote of thanks tendered to the Committee and Instructors for their work with the Cadets.

Brigadier Pearkes drew attention to the success of the Corps in being second in the Rifle Competition with teams throughout the British Empire; only losing to New Zealand by 1 point. He suggested, that as no prize was awarded to the A.M.I. cadet team, that the Institute might consider that a suitable recognition be given to those competitors. Approved.

### **Clerical Assistance**

The Directors recommended that a sum not exceeding \$120.00 be authorized for assistance to the Treasurer and that a sum not exceeding \$180.00 be authorized for the Honorary Secretary and his assistant during 1939.

Moved by Col. N. D. Dingle, seconded by Col. E. R. Knight, V.D., that the above amounts be authorized. Approved.

### **Annual Journal 1939**

The Directors recommended that the Annual Journal containing the activities and lectures for 1939 be published.

Moved by Col. E. R. Knight, V.D., seconded by Lieut. R. Jackson, that this recommendation be approved.

A vote of thanks was extended to Major A. C. Ballantine for the very excellent manner in which he had edited the last issue of the Journal, to Lieut. M. H. Robinson for his work in soliciting advertisements, and to Lieut. S. L. Miller who supervised the publication.

The meeting was advised that very favourable comments on the Journal had been received from a large number of members and others.

### **Alberta Provincial Rifle Association**

The Directors recommended that a grant of \$50.00 be authorized for the Annual Meet of the Alberta Provincial Rifle Association. The recommendation was adopted on motion proposed by Colonel Dingle and seconded by Major H. E. Wright.

It was explained that the grant was for a match open to members of Militia Units competing under service conditions.

## **THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL**

---

### **Vimy Dinner**

The Directors recommended that the Annual Vimy Dinner be held on Monday evening, April 10th, 1939.

This was approved on motion of Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C., seconded by Col. D. G. L. Cunningham, M.C., V.D.

It was stated that arrangements had been made for a distinguished speaker who was now in Europe and hoped to be back in time to address the members at the Dinner.

### **Garrison Officers' Mess**

It was recommended by the Directors that the incoming Directors be empowered to enter into and conclude an agreement with the Garrison Officers' Mess Committee regarding the use of rooms and charge for refreshments at meetings during 1939.

Approved on motion of Col. N. D. Dingle, seconded by Major P. P. Littlewood, V.D.

### **Armistice Ball**

The Directors recommended that the question of holding the Annual Armistice Ball in 1939 be thoroughly discussed and consideration given to suggestions which had been made whether it was desirable to hold the function on other than the customary date or changing the name of the Ball.

After discussion members present were of the opinion that the Ball should continue. The following motion was adopted, as proposed by Col. D. G. L. Cunningham, M.C., V.D., and seconded by Hon. Major G. W. Kerby, E.D., that the Armistice Ball be held on a suitable date in 1939 and that the Directors be empowered to make the necessary arrangements.

### **Garrison Theatre Night**

The question of the Institute sponsoring Garrison Theatre Nights was discussed.

Moved by Major H. E. Wright, seconded by Lieut. W. G. Ledingham, that if a suitable occasion should arise and it is the wish of the District Officer Commanding and Officers Commanding units, the Directors be authorized to arrange for a Garrison Theatre Night.

### **C.O.T.C. Scholarship**

The Directors recommended that a scholarship of \$50.00 be awarded to the candidate attaining the highest standing in Certificate "B" in the University of Alberta C.O.T.C. for the year 1939.

Approved on motion of Lieut. M. H. Robinson, seconded by Lt.-Col. A. C. Cooper-Johnston, M.C., V.D.

**Press**

It was moved by Major A. J. Davis, seconded by Lieut. S. L. Miller, and approved, that a vote of thanks be extended to the Calgary Daily Herald, The Calgary Albertan and Texaco Broadcasting Service for their co-operation and assistance during the year.

**Amendment to Constitution and By-Laws**

Resulting from a motion adopted at the last annual meeting regarding the question of admitting gentlemen as "Privileged Members" who are not already eligible to become members of the Institute, the Directors submitted the following proposal, which was moved by Capt. D. C. Sinclair and seconded by Major K. B. Lockett, and which was advised to all members under date of 14th January, 1939—

"(c) That the following sub-section be added to Article 1 on page 5 of the By-Laws:—

"(e) An Associate Member shall mean any Gentleman of distinction and eminence, resident within the City of Calgary, whose membership would be considered beneficial to the Institute and the Defence Forces of Canada, and who is not otherwise qualified for membership in the Institute; provided however, that an Associate member shall not have the right to vote on the affairs of the Institute, and shall not be eligible for election as an active officer of the Institute. The nomination and election of an Associate member of the Institute shall be the same as to nomination and election of an ordinary member thereto. Such Associate Membership shall be subject to payment of Annual Dues of Ten Dollars (\$10)."

Members fully discussed the proposal and some considered that the fee should not exceed that for ordinary members, i.e., \$5.00 per annum. Colonel Cunningham, speaking to the motion, drew attention to a proposal put forward some years ago which was intended to extend the membership to those who served overseas during the Great War other than in Commissioned rank, but which, at the time, was not adopted.

**MacGOSHAM STORAGE  
AND DISTRIBUTING CO.**  
(Calgary) LTD.

**FURNITURE STORAGE**

Local and Long Distance  
Furniture Moving

Crating - Shipping - Cartage

M 4444 — PHONES — M 7996

Office Phone M 3263

Office Hours: 9 a.m. to 5.30 p.m.

**Dr. S. H. Corben**  
**DENTIST**

910 SOUTHAM BUILDING  
CALGARY

He expressed the view that many advantages, which he explained, would arise by extending the Institute's membership but considered the fee should be five dollars a year. Colonel Cunningham, therefore, proposed an amendment to the motion to that effect, which was seconded by Major H. N. Heal.

Major V. R. Jones, in speaking to the motion, wondered whether the advantages and disadvantages of adopting the proposed amendment had been sufficiently considered. He pointed out that there was no real necessity for an enlarged membership as the funds were in a flourishing condition and the accommodation in the Mess was, on some occasions, hardly large enough to take care of the present membership which was now over 500. If the thought was to interest prominent citizens in the Militia, he felt that more effective results would come from having such persons associate themselves with the units rather than with the Institute, and that the Directors could serve a more useful purpose in that field by endeavouring first to stimulate the interest of the present membership.

Major Jones also outlined some of the embarrassing problems which would face the Directors in selecting associate members and warned that the question of the principle of selection to be adopted might open up many opportunities for dissension amongst the members and with the Garrison Mess, which he felt it was most desirable to avoid.

The views of Major Jones were supported by Lieut.-Col. J. F. Scott and Lieut.-Col. W. K. Jull.

Lieut. T. W. Collinge, who acted on the first committee appointed to consider the matter after the last annual meeting, explained the reason for the delay in the submission of the recommendations.

After further discussion, Col. N. D. Dingle moved and Lieut.-Col. J. F. Scott seconded an amendment to the amendment "That a committee be named by the District Officer Commanding to set up and introduce an amendment to Section VII of the Constitution and By-Laws which will provide for the admission of gentlemen (not otherwise eligible) as non-voting members of the Institute". On a vote being taken Colonel Dingle's amendment to the amendment was carried.

A motion of which notice had been given was proposed by Colonel Cunningham, seconded by Colonel Dingle, and carried, amending Section VII of the Constitution and By-Laws to read as follows:

"Nominations for election of Officers and Directors of the Alberta Military Institute shall be made by a Nominating Committee to be appointed annually by the President, which Committee shall report such nominations to the Directors prior to the 10th December of the current year. Nominations for Officers and Directors may also be made by ordinary members in good standing by submitting



## **THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL**

---

to the Secretary on or before the 1st day of December a nomination in writing, signed by two such members and agreed to by the nominee; these shall be furnished to the Nominating Committee. Nominations shall not be made otherwise. The names of the members so nominated shall be submitted to the Annual General Meeting for Election."

(Note:—Previously the Nominating Committee was appointed by the President and Directors).

### **Report of Affiliated Branches**

The Secretary advised that a report had been received from the Red Deer Branch which had held several meetings during the year.

Moved by Col. N. D. Dingle, seconded by Major A. J. Davis, and approved, that report be adopted and that the dues from affiliated branches be waived during 1939 as recommended by the Directors.

### **Nominations of Officers for 1939**

In accordance with Section VII of the Constitution and By-Laws the following nominations had been made by a Nominating Committee or by members:—

#### **Patrons**

His Excellency The Governor-General of Canada.  
His Honour The Lieutenant-Governor of Alberta.  
The Right Hon. W. L. Mackenzie King, C.M.G., P.C., M.A., LL.B., LL.D., M.P., Prime Minister of Canada.  
Hon. Colonel The Right Hon. R. B. Bennett, E.D., P.C., K.C., LL.B., LL.D.  
The Hon. Ian A. MacKenzie, P.C., M.A., LL.B., M.P., Minister of National Defence.  
Major-General T. V. Anderson, D.S.O., Chief of the General Staff.  
Major-General H. H. Matthews, C.M.G., D.S.O., Adjutant-General.  
Lieut.-General Sir A. C. Macdonell, K.C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O.  
Major-General A. H. Bell, C.M.G., D.S.O.  
Major-General The Hon. W. A. Griesbach, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., V.D.  
Colonel G. E. Sanders, C.M.G., D.S.O.

#### **Honorary President**

Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C., District Officer Commanding, Military District 13.

#### **Honorary Vice-Presidents**

Colonel D. G. L. Cunningham, M.C., V.D.  
Lieut.-Colonel D. Ritchie, M.C.  
Lieut. H. C. Farthing.

## **THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL**

---

Colonel E. R. Knight, V.D.  
Lieut.-Colonel D. H. Tomlinson, M.B.E., V.D.  
Major J. W. Littleton, M.C.  
Lieut.-Colonel H. Pryde.  
Colonel N. D. Dingle.  
Colonel H. C. A. Hervey, V.D.

### **President**

Captain H. G. Nolan, M.C.

### **Vice-President**

Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Cooper-Johnston, M.C., V.D.  
Major H. E. Wright.

### **Honorary Secretary**

Major A. J. Davis.

### **Treasurer**

Lieut. S. L. Miller.

### **Directors**

(7 to be elected)

Major J. U. Acton.  
Major F. G. Bird, M.C.  
Lieut. T. E. Burns.  
Lieut. T. W. Collinge.  
Major P. V. Harcourt, D.C.M.  
Lieut. R. Jackson.  
Capt. F. H. Johnson, M.C.  
Lieut.-Col. R. Nash.  
Lieut.-Col. E. R. Selby, D.S.O., V.D.  
Major H. E. Wright.

The Secretary advised that after the publication of the nominations a letter was received from Major H. E. Wright asking that his name be withdrawn from nomination for Vice-President so that Lieut.-Col. A. C. Cooper-Johnston, M.C., V.D., who, for his many years of loyal and faithful service to the Militia and also for his excellent help to the Institute as a former Director, might be elected as Vice-President by acclamation. The Secretary stated that the Directors had accepted Major Wright's withdrawal.

The Patrons, Honorary President, and Honorary Vice-President as nominated were elected on motion proposed by Major G. D. C. McEwen and seconded by Capt. G. R. Bradbrooke, M.C.

The following were declared by the President as elected by acclamation:—

President—Captain H. G. Nolan, M.C.

Vice-President—Lieut.-Col. A. C. Cooper-Johnston, M.C., V.D.

## **THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL**

---

Honorary Secretary—Major A. J. Davis.  
Treasurer—Lieut. S. L. Miller.

As the Constitution only provides for seven Directors and ten members were nominated an election was necessary.

The President appointed as scrutineers, Col. E. R. Knight, V.D., Major V. R. Jones, Capt. G. R. Bradbrooke, M.C., and Capt. A. G. Willson, who, upon conclusion of their duties were thanked by the President. As a result of a ballot the following, as shown in alphabetical order, were declared elected as Directors—

Major J. U. Acton.  
Lieut. T. W. Collinge.  
Major P. V. Harcourt, D.C.M.  
Capt. F. H. Johnson, M.C.  
Lieut.-Colonel R. Nash.  
Lieut.-Colonel E. R. Selby, D.S.O.  
Major H. E. Wright.

### **Address by Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C.**

During the counting of the ballots Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C., District Officer Commanding, M.D. No. 13, addressed the meeting, congratulating the Institute on its continued success which, he said, made him proud of any part he had taken in its formation. He stated in his opinion the Institute was playing a most important part in the life of the Calgary Garrison and made a strong appeal for even greater efforts to be extended by all members in assisting the N.P.A.M. units to recruit to their full establishment.

### **Appointment of Chaplain**

The Directors recommended the appointment of Hon. Capt. Rev. Alexander Patterson, as Chaplain for the year 1939. Moved by Major H. E. Wright and seconded by Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Cooper-Johnston, that the recommendation of the Directors be adopted. Approved

### **Honorary Librarian**

The Directors recommended the appointment of Lieut. L. E. Lick as Librarian for the year 1939. Approved on motion by Lieut. R. Jackson and seconded by Capt. R. Richmond, M.C.

### **Hand-over to Incoming President**

Colonel H. C. A. Hervey, V.D., invited Capt. H. G. Nolan, M.C., newly-elected President, to take the Chair, wishing him every success, and asking the members to continue to the incoming President and Directors the co-operation and support which they had in the past so readily given.

Captain Nolan, upon taking the Chair, thanked the members for the honour conferred upon him and expressed the Institute's appreciation to the retiring President and Directors.

**New Business—Honorary Life Member**

Moved by Colonel N. D. Dingle, seconded by Colonel H. C. A. Hervey, V.D., that Rt. Hon. R. B. Bennett, E.D., P.C., K.C., LL.B., LL.D., be elected a Life Member. Motion carried unanimously.

**Prizes, Etc., for N.P.A.M.**

Moved by Lieut.-Colonel W. K. Jull, M.C.C., seconded by Major V. R. Jones, that the Directors consider the advisability of setting aside an appropriation towards benefits for the N.P.A.M. such as prizes for Shooting, Sports, etc. Approved. Hon. Major (Rev.) G. W. Kerby, E.D., stated that he would be glad to contribute the sum of ten dollars for this purpose, for which he was thanked.

**Sarcee Camp C.E.F. Memorial Mounds**

Moved by Major V. R. Jones, seconded by Colonel E. R. Knight, V.D., that the Directors be requested to consider the idea of forming a Committee for the purpose of keeping in good shape the various C.E.F. Memorial Mounds on the hills in and about Sarcee Camp, and if necessary make an appropriation towards the cost.

**Donation of Books**

Lieut.-Colonel W. K. Jull, M.C., stated he would present histories of the 16th and 48th Bns. C.E.F., and also that Mr. W. H. Siborne of Calgary, who served overseas with the 5th Bn. C.E.F., is donating to the library books and documents, the property of his grandfather, Capt. W. Siborne, of the 9th Regiment, who fought at the Battle of Waterloo, consisting of:—

History of British Wars—6 volumes, published 1852.

Prints of Scenes at Waterloo, published 1820.

Book of Maps, published 1820

Captain Siborne prepared the model of the Battle of Waterloo, now in the United Services Museum in London.

Mr. Siborne also presented a Diary of Campaigns in the Peninsula, as published in 1895, formerly the property of his father, Major-General H. T. Siborne, and written by Lieutenant William Swabey, then of the Royal Horse Artillery and later Lieut.-Colonel and Adjutant-General Militia for Prince Edward Island, Canada.

Brigadier Pearkes announced that he will be pleased to donate twelve volumes of Military History and Biography.

**Ball During Visit of Their Majesties, The King and Queen**

Moved by Colonel N. D. Dingle, seconded by Lieut.-Comdr. C. H. Bromley, that the Directors give consideration to the holding of a Military Ball on the occasion of the visit of Their Majesties, The King and Queen. Approved

**Congratulations to Major Kerby**

The President extended to Major G. W. Kerby, E.D., the hearty congratulations of the Institute on the recent promotion of his son,

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

Group Capt. H. S. Kerby, D.F.C., A.F.C., to that rank in the Royal Air Force. Group Capt. Kerby proceeded from Calgary at his own expense to England during the early part of the Great War to join the Royal Naval Air Service, and thereby paved the way for many other Canadians to enter that service in which he had many thrilling experiences, including engagements with that great German Air Ace Richtoffen. While serving in Gallipoli his plane was shot down in flames and landed in the sea. Although reported as fatally wounded he rapidly recovered and later received an important command at Freeston in charge of the final training of pilots prior to proceeding to the front.

An unique experience was the saving the life of an adversary whose plane he put out of action, and when it fell into the sea he gallantly descended and threw his own life belt to the victim who was able to stay afloat until rescued.

Group Captain Kerby for some years served, with distinction, in the Royal Air Force in the Far East but it is understood soon is to be transferred to England to take up a senior post.

### **Vote of Thanks to Colonel Hervey, V.D.**

Moved by Colonel D. G. L. Cunningham, M.C., V.D.; seconded by Major P. P. Littlewood, V.D.; that a very hearty vote of thanks be extended to Colonel H. C. A. Hervey, V.D., for his splendid work with the Institute and the Militia in this District. Approved.

There being no further business, the meeting closed at 11.10 p.m. with the singing of the National Anthem, after which refreshments were served.



**CO-OP  
MILK** M 5426

*Keeps You Vigorous*

**CO-OPERATIVE MILK CO.**  
704 - 11th Avenue West

**Gray, Byrne & Co. Ltd.**

**INVESTMENT  
SECURITIES**

700 LANCASTER BUILDING  
CALGARY, ALBERTA

# THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

## Revenue Statement for Year Ending 31st December, 1938

### RECEIPTS

|                                             |            |
|---------------------------------------------|------------|
| Membership Dues .....                       | \$1,648.00 |
| Grant: Department of National Defence ..... | 500.00     |
| Interest .....                              | 269.53     |
| Armistice Ball .....                        | \$665.00   |
| Less Expenses .....                         | 607.02     |
| Library—Sale of Bookcases .....             | 57.98      |
|                                             | 25.00      |

### DISBURSEMENTS

|                                                        |            |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------|--------|
| Garrison Officers' Mess—Proportion of Current Resident |            |        |
| Membership Dues .....                                  | \$566.00   |        |
| Lectures, etc.:                                        |            |        |
| Refreshments for Evening Meetings ..                   | \$285.00   |        |
| Expenses of Meetings .....                             | 50.00      |        |
|                                                        | \$335.00   |        |
| Vimy Dinner—Expenses .....                             | \$397.94   |        |
| Less Receipts .....                                    | 340.50     |        |
|                                                        | 57.44      |        |
| New Year's Reception—1938 .....                        | 37.92      |        |
| Alberta Military Institute Cadet Corps:                |            | 430.36 |
| 1938 Camp Expenses .....                               | \$295.43   |        |
| Other Expenses for Year .....                          | 54.30      |        |
|                                                        | \$349.73   |        |
| Less Grant by Dept. National Defence                   |            |        |
| for Expenses incurred on 1937 Camp .....               | 165.00     |        |
|                                                        |            | 184.73 |
| Grants:                                                |            |        |
| Alberta Provincial Rifle Association .....             | \$ 50.00   |        |
| Calgary Garrison Men's Recreation Room .....           | 25.00      |        |
|                                                        |            | 75.00  |
| Scholarship—University of Alberta C.O.T.C. ....        |            | 50.00  |
| Annual Journal:                                        |            |        |
| Cost of Publishing, etc .....                          | \$488.41   |        |
| Less Receipts for Advertisements .....                 | 449.00     |        |
|                                                        |            | 39.41  |
| General Expenses:                                      |            |        |
| Clerical Help .....                                    | \$350.00   |        |
| Library: Depreciation, etc. ....                       | \$125.00   |        |
| Current Expenses .....                                 | 45.90      |        |
|                                                        | 170.90     |        |
| Circulars and Notices to Members .....                 | 158.93     |        |
| Printing and Stationery .....                          | 43.05      |        |
| Postage .....                                          | 37.43      |        |
| Audit .....                                            | 30.00      |        |
| Presentations .....                                    | 29.00      |        |
| Wreaths .....                                          | 27.50      |        |
| Depreciation on Office Equipment and                   |            |        |
| Pictures, etc. ....                                    | 22.00      |        |
| Gratuities .....                                       | 15.00      |        |
| Revenue Stamps, Safety Deposit Box and                 |            |        |
| Exchange .....                                         | 12.30      |        |
| Baseball Entry Fees for 1937 and 1938                  |            |        |
| A.M.I. Team .....                                      | 10.00      |        |
| Insurance .....                                        | 9.70       |        |
| Telegrams .....                                        | 2.35       |        |
| Repairs to Pictures .....                              | 2.25       |        |
|                                                        |            | 920.41 |
| Total Expenses for 1938 .....                          | \$2,265.91 |        |
| Amount Transferred to Interest Reserve .....           | 107.71     |        |
| Balance of Profit for Year 1938 Transferred to         |            |        |
| Surplus Account .....                                  | 126.89     |        |

\$2,500.51    \$2 500.51

# ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE

## BALANCE SHEET - 31ST DECEMBER, 1938

| ASSETS                                 |                   | LIABILITIES                           |                   |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Cash—                                  |                   | Prepaid Dues                          | \$ 48.00          |
| Bank Balance—Current Account           | \$238.51          | Reserve for Interest Receivable as at |                   |
| Bank Balance—Savings Account           | 25.16             | 1st January, 1938                     | \$ 153.28         |
| Cash on Hand                           | 30.00             | Transferred from Revenue Account      |                   |
| Accrued Interest Receivable            |                   | for Year 1938                         | 107.71            |
| Accounts Receivable                    | \$ 293.67         |                                       | 260.99            |
|                                        | 585.84            |                                       |                   |
|                                        | 14.00             |                                       |                   |
| Investments—                           |                   | SURPLUS—                              |                   |
| Bonds and Savings Certificates at cost |                   | Balance as at 1st January, 1938       | \$6,361.98        |
| Par Value                              | 5,283.50          | Profit for Year 1938 as per           |                   |
| Market Value as at 31st                |                   | Revenue Statement                     | 126.89            |
| December, 1938                         | 4,257.00          |                                       | 6,488.87          |
| Library—                               |                   |                                       |                   |
| Books and Equipment                    | \$ 306.18         |                                       |                   |
| Furniture                              | 271.17            |                                       |                   |
| Office Equipment, Pictures, etc.       |                   |                                       |                   |
|                                        | 577.35            |                                       |                   |
|                                        | 43.50             |                                       |                   |
|                                        | <u>\$6,797.86</u> |                                       | <u>\$6,797.86</u> |

Audited and found correct:

F. J. BUTLER, Lieut., Auditor.  
Calgary, Alta., 7th January, 1939.

Certified correct:

S. L. MILLER, Treasurer.

# Alberta Military Institute Membership List

## PAST PRESIDENTS

|                                              |         |
|----------------------------------------------|---------|
| Colonel G. E. Sanders, C.M.G., D.S.O.        | 1920-21 |
| (Late) Colonel George Macdonald, V.D.        | 1922    |
| (Late) Lt.-Col. J. N. Gunn, D.S.O., V.D.     | 1923    |
| Deputy Commissioner J. W. Spalding, R.C.M.P. | 1924    |
| Major-General D. W. B. Spry, O.B.E., V.D.    | 1925    |
| Lt.-Col. G. H. Whyte, M.C.                   | 1926    |
| Colonel D. G. L. Cunningham, M.C., V.D.      | 1927    |
| Major H. W. McGill, M.C., V.D.               | 1928    |
| (Late) Major A. N. Martin                    | 1929    |
| Lt.-Col. D. Ritchie, M.C.                    | 1930    |
| Lieut. Hugh Farthing                         | 1931    |
| Brigadier L. F. Page, D.S.O.                 | 1932    |
| Colonel E. R. Knight, V.D.                   | 1933    |
| Brigadier D. J. MacDonald, D.S.O., M.C.      | 1934    |
| Lt.-Col. D. H. Tomlinson, M.B.E., V.D.       |         |
| Major J. W. Littleton, M.C.                  | 1935    |
| Lt.-Col. H. Pryde                            | 1936    |
| Colonel N. D. Dingle                         | 1937    |
| Colonel H. C. A. Hervey, V.D.                | 1938    |

## LIFE MEMBERS

Major-General A. H. Bell, C.M.G., D.S.O.  
 Brigadier G. R. Pearkes, V.C., D.S.O., M.C.  
 Colonel G. E. Sanders, C.M.G., D.S.O.  
 Major-General D. W. B. Spry, O.B.E., V.D.  
 Lieut.-General Sir A. C. Macdonell, K.C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O.  
 Hon. Colonel the Right Hon. R. B. Bennett, E.D., P.C.,  
 K.C., LL.B., LL.D.

## HONORARY MEMBERS

The Rt. Rev. L. Ralph Sherman, M.A., D.D.  
 Hon. Mr. Justice A. H. Clarke.  
 L. W. Brockington, Esq., K.C.

## RESIDENT MEMBERS

### A

Acton, J. U., Major  
 Adams, F. D., Capt.  
 Adams, J. M., Capt.  
 Alexander, L. G., Lieut.  
 Alexander, John P., Capt.  
 Andrews, C. S., Lieut.  
 Annand, S. A., Lieut.  
 Ayres, F. W., Lieut.

### B

Baker, W. H., Capt.  
 Ballachey, A. A., Lieut.  
 Ballantyne, A. C., Major  
 Banks, B. W., Capt.

Barlow, B. E., Lieut.  
 Baxter, R. T., Lieut.  
 Begg, John, Major  
 Bell, C. A., Major, M.C.  
 Bell, W. A., Lieut.  
 Bennett, R. B., Hon. Col. the Rt.  
 Hon., E.D., P.C., K.C., LL.B.,  
 LL.D., M.P.  
 Bentley, A., Capt.  
 Bermingham, F. G., 2nd Lieut.  
 Berryman, A. M., Hon. Lt.-Col.  
 Bide, W. G., Capt.  
 Bingham, J. F., Lieut.  
 Bird, F. G., Major, M.C.  
 Blair, J., Lieut.  
 Blake, G. W., 2nd Lieut.  
 Blow, H. F., Lieut.



## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

### RESIDENT MEMBERS—Continued.

Boalch, E. H., Lieut  
Borland, R. C., 2nd Lieut  
Bouck, C., Capt.  
Bown, E. A. Q., Lieut.  
Bowness, E. W., Hon. Lt.-Col.  
Bradbrooke, G. R., Capt., M.C.  
Bradley, S. F., Lt.-Col., E.D.  
Bromley, C. H., Lt.-Comdr  
Brooks, W. M., Capt.  
Brown, A. H., Capt  
Brown, J. E., Lieut.  
Burns, T. E., Lieut.  
Burr, F. G., Capt.  
Burrell, Geo. E., Lieut.  
Burton, John, Lieut.  
Butler, F. J., Lieut  
Byrnes, H. J., Lieut.

#### C

Campbell, E. D., Capt  
Campbell, F. T., Lt.-Col., M.C.,  
V.D.  
Campbell, J. C., Lieut.  
Campbell, Norman A., Capt  
Cardell, H. J., Lieut.  
Carlile, R. C., Capt.  
Carr, C. B., Capt.  
Carson, H. R., Lieut.  
Cavanaugh, L. A., Lt.-Col.  
Cave, J. H., Major  
Chapman, L. H., Major  
Chase, A. V., Lieut  
Choate, C. A., Major  
Chritchley, H. F., Lieut.  
Chubb, A. G., Lieut.  
Clapperton, D. S., 2nd Lieut.  
Clark, C. Boville, Lieut.  
Cody, M. G., Capt.  
Collinge, Thos. W., Lieut.  
Corben, S. H., Lieut.  
Corbet, C. V. B., 2nd Lieut.  
Corley, J. B., Capt  
Costigane, A. R., Major  
Crichton, J. H., Capt.  
Cummings, G. J., Lieut  
Cunnington, D. G. L., Col., M.C.,  
V.D.  
Currey, F. E., Capt.

#### D

Dailley, W. G. B., Major, O.B.E.  
Davies, S. J., Major, M.C.  
Davis, A. J., Major  
Dawson, H. R., Major  
Devey, C. W., Lt.-Col.  
Dingle, Norman D., Col.  
Dingman, A. R., Lieut.  
Donald, T. B., Capt.  
Dowler, P. E., Capt.  
Downie, R., Major, V.D.

#### E

Edwards, E. W., Capt.

Ellissen, Myles A., Capt., M.C.  
Emslie, W. J. F., Capt.  
Evans, W. W., 2nd Lieut.  
Ewens, G. M., Lieut.

#### F

Farquharson, S. R., Capt  
Farren, E., Lieut.  
Farrow, N. A., Capt.  
Farthing, H. C., Lieut.  
Fenerty, R. I. D., Lieut  
Ferguson, A. H., Capt  
Fetherstonhaugh, W. S., Lt.-Col.,  
C.B.E.  
Findlay, E. M., Lieut.  
Firmstone, W. E., Major  
Fish, F. H., Capt.  
Flood, L. R., Lieut.  
Folkins, G. A., Lieut.  
Foster, J. R., Lieut.  
Fotheringham, D. T., Capt.  
Francis, H. W., Major  
Franks, H. G. S., Capt., M.C.  
Freeborn, S. G., Major, M.C.  
Frickleton, W. C., Lieut.  
Fullerton, E. G., Sqdn Ldr.

#### G

Gaherty, G. A., Capt  
Gibson, J. K., 2nd Lieut.  
Gianelli, N. A., Major  
Goodchild, R. H., Lieut.  
Gordon, J. P., 2nd Lieut., M.M  
Graham, F., Lieut  
Gray, J. T., Lieut.  
Greene, M. K., Lt.-Col  
Green, L., 2nd Lieut.  
Gulland, F. M., Lieut.  
Gunderson, R. H., Lieut.

#### H

Harkness, D. S., Capt.,  
Hanna, J. J., Capt.  
Hanning, J. E., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
Harcourt, P. V., Major, D.C.M.  
Harvie, E. L., Capt  
Haworth, D. C., Lieut.  
Heal, H. N., Major  
Heard, S. F., Sqdn. Ldr.  
Hervey, H. C. A., Col., V.D  
Higgins, F. C., Sqdn. Ldr.  
Hinton, H. S., Capt.  
Hoar, C. R., 2nd Lieut.  
Hodson, J. C., Capt.  
Hodsmythe, R. C., Lieut  
Hogarth, James, Major  
Howard, A. E., Capt.  
Hunter, J. E., Major  
Hutcheon, J. H., 2nd Lieut.

#### I

Ingraham, Geo. F., Lieut.  
Ilott, E. W. J., Lieut.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

### RESIDENT MEMBERS—Continued.

#### J

Jackson, R., Lieut.  
James, E. W., Capt.  
Jardine, H. W., Major  
Jennings, H. N., Lieut.  
Jenson, E. L., Lieut.  
Johnson, F. H., Capt., M C  
Johnson, G. R., Lt-Col., V.D.  
Johnson, H. H., Major  
Johnston, A. C. Cooper, Lt-Col.,  
M.C., V.D.  
Johnston, G. E. H., Lieut.  
Johnston, S., Lieut.  
Jones, C. W., Lieut.  
Jones, Sidney, Lieut.  
Jones, V. R., Major  
Jull, W. K., Lt-Col., M.C., V.D.

#### K

Keenan, M., Lieut.  
Kellam, G. D., Lieut  
Kelly, B. J., 2nd Lieut.  
Kelley, F. H., Lieut.  
Kendall, K. G., Lieut.  
Kerby, G. W., Hon. Major, E.D.  
Knight, E. R., Col., V.D.

#### L

Lake, Burt, Major  
Lane, Leo C., Major  
Lane, W. L., Capt.  
Langston, A. E., Lieut.  
Lasher, E. W., Lieut.  
Laybourne, T. W., Capt., D.C.M.  
Learmonth, G. E., Capt.  
Ledingham, W. G., Lieut.  
Leech, G. C., Lieut.  
Lethbridge, E. R., Major  
Lick, L. E., Lieut.  
Lipsett, L. R., Major, O.B.E.  
Littleton, J. W., Major, M.C.  
Littlewood, P. P., Major, V.D.  
Lockett, K. B., Major  
Lockwood, G. E., Capt.  
Lucy, R. E., 2nd Lieut.

#### M

Manning, F. C., 2nd Lieut.  
Mapson, F. W., Major  
Mason, E. G., Lt.-Col., O B.E., V.D.  
Matthews, D. C., Lieut.  
Matthews, R. H., Lieut.  
Maw, A., Major  
Maxwell, William, Capt., M.M.  
Meers, M. E., Lieut.  
Middlemass, J. D., Lieut.  
Millar, W. A., Capt.  
Miller, John, Major, M.C.  
Miller, S. L., Lieut.  
Miller, W. St. J., Lieut.  
Millican, G. W. H., Lt.-Col., M.C.

Morris, S. C. W., Capt.  
Morton, R. E. A., Capt.  
Motherwell, W. Capt., V.D.  
Murrison, A. D., Capt.  
Murray, T. F., Capt.  
Murray, W. B., Capt.

#### Mac

Macaulay, M. G., Lieut.  
Maddougall, G. L., Lieut.  
Mackid, L. S., Major  
Mackid, B. S., Lieut.  
Mackie, A. K., Lieut.  
MacLauchlan, D., Major  
MacLauchlan, D. G., Major  
MacLaren, A. H., Capt.  
MacLeod, J. E. A., Lieut.  
MacWilliams, A. C., Lieut.

#### Mc

McCall, F. R., Capt., D.S.O., M C,  
D.F.C.  
McCarthy, L. G., Lieut.  
McDonald, D. A., Lieut.  
McDougall, D. J., Major  
McEwen, G. D. C., Major  
McFadyen, M. D., Capt.  
McGuffin, W. H., Capt.  
McIntosh, William, Major  
McKibbin, H. A., Lieut.  
McKinley-Key, J., Lieut.  
McLean, H. J., Lieut.  
McLean, J. A., Major, M.M.  
McMullen, S. S., 2nd Lieut.

#### N

Naismith, A. M., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
Napper, G. E., Lieut.  
Nash, Roy, Lt-Col.  
Naylor, C. F., Major  
Neeland, J. H., Capt., M.M., E.D.  
Neeland, T. W., Lieut.  
Nettleton, G. H., Capt.  
Newcombe, E. B., Capt  
Noble, William, Capt.  
Nolan, H. G., Capt., M.C.  
Nowers, B. L., Lieut.

#### O

Orr, C., 2nd Lieut.  
Orr, W. J., Lieut.  
Ough, H. J., Lieut.  
Ower, J. R., Lieut.

#### P

Page, C. E., Major  
Pallister, A. R., 2nd Lieut.  
Park, A. W., Major  
Parks, J. H., Lt.-Col, D.S.O.,  
O.B.E.  
Paterson, A., Hon. Capt.

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

### RESIDENT MEMBERS—Continued.

Parsons, E. H., Major  
 Patterson, W. H., Lieut.  
 Payne, P. J. R., Major  
 Peacock, M. B., Lt.-Col.  
 Pease, H. L., Capt.  
 Pinder, Geo. Z., Capt., M.C.  
 Plummer, N. M., Hon. Major  
 Pook, G. Gidley, Capt.  
 Price, Harold W., Lieut.  
 Price, R. W., Lieut.  
 Pryde, Harry, Lt.-Col.  
 Pullar, J. G., Capt., M.C.  
 Purdy, Gordon S., Major, M.M.  
 Purves, R. L., 2nd Lieut.

#### Q

Quigley, R. M., Capt.  
 Quint, W. S., Lt.-Col.

#### R

Ragg, H. R., Hon. Capt.  
 Randall, L. W. H., Capt.  
 Redman, D. L., Col., V.D.  
 Reed, H. K., Lieut.  
 Reed, L. M. K., Lieut.  
 Reid, J. A., Lt.-Col.  
 Reid, R. W. B., Lieut.  
 Richardson, D. A., Lieut.  
 Richardson, H. G., Lieut.  
 Richmond, R., Capt., M.C.  
 Riddell, L. R., Capt.  
 Riley, H. H., Major, M.M.  
 Ritchie, D., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
 Robbins, W. B., Lt.-Col.  
 Robertson, D. K., Lieut.  
 Robinson, G. S., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
 Robinson, M. H., Lieut.  
 Rogers, D. F., Major  
 Rose, J. V., Lieut.  
 Ross, D. A., Lieut.  
 Rowlands, J. H., Lt.-Com.

#### S

Sawley, H., Capt.  
 Scott, J. Fred, Lt.-Col.  
 Scott, J. O., Superintendent  
 Selby, E. R., Lt.-Col., D.S.O.  
 Sellar, W. M., Lieut.  
 Shields, P. R., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
 Shillington, R. N. W., Major  
 Shore, A. E., Lt.-Col.  
 Shouldice, F. L., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
 Sinclair, D. C., Capt.  
 Skinner, T. A., Capt.  
 Smith, W. N., Lieut.  
 Snell, A. E., Lieut.  
 Somerville, T. O'D., Lieut.  
 Spencer-Leigh, O. L., Major  
 Stagg, J. W., Major, M.C.  
 Stanley, E. V., 2nd Lieut.  
 Stapels, M. H., Lieut.  
 Stata, H. S., Lieut.  
 Steel, F. M., Lt.-Col., D.S.O.

Stott, Vernon, Lieut.  
 Stow, R. F., Lieut.  
 Strachan, H., Major, V.C., M.C.,  
 A.D.C.  
 Strange, R. B., Capt.  
 Stuart, Duncan, Major  
 Stunden, W. G., Capt.  
 Sugden, J. L., Lt.-Col., O.B.E.  
 Suttle, J. A., Capt.  
 Swanson, C., Hon. Capt.

#### T

Taylor, J. M., Major  
 Thompson, G. H., Capt.  
 Thomson, R. J., Major  
 Thompson, W. H. A., Lieut.  
 Thomson, J. H. R., Capt.  
 Tomlinson, D. H., Lt.-Col., M.B.E.,  
 V.D.  
 Toole, A. J., Capt., M.C.  
 Tregillus, A. L., Lieut.  
 Trusler, S. F., Lieut.  
 Tulloch, A., Lieut.  
 Turney, A. H., Lieut.

#### V

Valentine, J. C., Major  
 Valentine, L. J., Lieut.

#### W

Waddell, Norman V., Capt., M.C.  
 Ward, E. I., Lieut.  
 Ward, H. G., 2nd Lieut.  
 Warren, J. M., Capt.  
 Watt, G. E., Lieut.  
 Watts, M. L., Lieut.  
 Webster, G. W., Lieut.  
 Welsh, S. M., Major  
 West, W. C., Major  
 White, H. E., Capt.  
 Whiteoak, J. B., Lieut.  
 Whiteoak, J. T., Lieut.  
 Williams, T. J., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
 Willson, A. G., Capt.  
 Wilson, H. I., Major  
 Wolley-Dod, W. R., Capt.  
 Woods, J. H., Lt.-Col., C.M.G.  
 Woodside, D. H., Capt.  
 Wright, H. E., Major.  
 Wright, M. H., Lt.-Col., M.M.  
 Wright, T. L., Major, M.C.

#### Y

Young, C. E., Lieut.  
 Young, F. G., Lieut.  
 Young, J. W., 2nd Lieut.

#### Z

Zubick, J. J., Lieut.

NON-RESIDENT MEMBERS

**A**

Adams, J. H., Lieut.  
Adams, W. J., Lieut.  
Allhusen, O., Major  
Anderson, C. E., Major  
Anderson, C. G., Lieut.  
Armstrong, B. C., Lieut.

**B**

Babb, R., Capt., M.C.  
Bagley, F. A., Major  
Bagshaw, J. E., Lieut.  
Barnes, R. F., Lt.-Col.  
Beatty, J. H., Major  
Bermejo, V. T., Capt.  
Bisset, J., Major, O.B.E.  
Bosomworth, S. L., Capt.  
Bowes, V. A., Lieut.  
Bown, J. C. Q., Lieut.  
Braidwood, D. F., Lieut.  
Brown, Richard, Major  
Bryan, R. D., Capt.  
Bryan, W. C., Lieut.  
Buckingham, E. H., Capt.  
Burton, P., Capt.

**C**

Carmichael, G., Major, M.C.  
Casewell, L. G., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
Cawthorne, A. J., Lieut.  
Child, C. G., Lt.-Col.  
Clark, C. A., Capt.  
Clarke, K. A. C., 2nd Lieut.  
Connolly, C. E., Lt.-Col., D.S.O.

**D**

Darker, R. A., Capt.  
Davidson, G. N., Capt.  
Davis, G. Rider, Lieut.  
Dawson, E., Lieut.

**E**

Eddy, Jos. U., Lieut.  
Esplen, D. M., Lieut.

**F**

Fendall, F. J., Capt.  
Ferguson, A. S., Lieut.  
Fenton, R. C., Major  
Fletcher, R. W., Capt.

**G**

Gayfer, A. J., Major  
Gooderham, G. H., Capt.  
Graham, G., Capt., D.S.O.  
Gresham, J. W., Major

Griesbach, W. A., Maj.-Gen., C.B.,  
C M G., D.S.O., V.D.

**H**

Harvey, F. M. W., Lt.-Col., V.C.,  
M.C.  
Hawkins, John R., Lt.-Col.  
Hervey, G. E., Capt., D.S.C.  
Hervey, V. H., Capt.  
Hewgill, W. H., Lt.-Col., O.B.E.,  
V.D.  
Highton, A. H., Major  
Holden, F. M., Lieut., M.B.E.  
Hoover, G. A., Lt.-Col.  
House, J. W., Hon. Capt.  
Howard, E. M., 2nd Lieut.  
Hugill, J. W., Major  
Hutchison, J. A., Capt.

**I**

Ireland, R. A., Lieut.

**J**

Jackson, J. H., Lt.-Col.  
Jamieson, J. J., Capt.  
Jamieson, R. C., Capt.  
Jenkins, F. H., Major  
Jennings, P. J., Major, O.B.E.  
Jessup, R. C., Major  
Johnson, Percy W., Lieut.  
Jones, U. A., Lieut.

**K**

Knight, H., Lieut.

**L**

Ladler, A. E., Lt.-Col., V.D.  
Lamb, W. V., Major  
Lambert, J. S., Capt.  
Leighton, G. E., Major, D.S.O.  
Lethbridge, J. E., Lieut.  
Lewis, A. G. B., Lt.-Col., V.D.  
Lister, R. C., Lt.-Col., M.C., M.M.  
Lloyd, R. E. A., Lt.-Col., V.D.  
Lord, V. S., F.O. (Rev.)  
Lowery, W. W., Lieut.  
Lowrie, J. H., Capt.  
Lyndon, C. A., Major

**M**

Martin, W. G. B., Capt., M.C.  
Mason, A. W., Lieut.  
Metcalf, S. W., Capt.  
Middleton, S. H., Major (Rev  
Canon)

## THE ALBERTA MILITARY INSTITUTE ANNUAL JOURNAL

### NON-RESIDENT MEMBERS—Continued.

Miller, L. W., Major, D.S.O.  
Mitton, T. W., Lieut.  
Moody, R. W., Fly. Off.  
Morris, A. B., Capt.  
Murison, K. G., Major

#### Mac

MacAulay, A. G., Major, M.C.  
MacDonald, D. J., Brig., D.S.O.,  
M.C.  
Macfarquhar, R. D., Lieut.  
MacDonald, J. A., Major, M.C.  
MacGlasham, D. J., Major  
Mackay, J. Grant, Capt.  
Mackenzie, C. D., Lieut.

#### Mc

McGill, H. W., Major, M.C., V.D.  
McKenzie, B., Lieut.  
McKinney, N. J. G., Major  
McLean, R. G., Capt.  
McMullen, S. L., Hon. Lt.-Col.

#### N

Nelson, K., Major, M.M.  
Nicolle, R. J., Lieut.

#### O

O'Connor, L., Capt.  
Ormond, D. M., Maj.-Gen.,  
C.M.G., D.S.O.

#### P

Page, L. F., Brig., D.S.O.  
Pearson, S. C., Capt.  
Pearce, Newton, Capt.  
Pearce, W. M., Major, M.C.  
Pennyfather, P. W., Supt  
Pope, E. L., Lt.-Col.  
Porteous, G., Capt.  
Potter, J. L., Col.  
Pugh, J. E., Capt. M.C.  
Pullen, E. F., Major, D.S.O.

#### R

Rees, W. A. R., Major  
Reid, J. G., Lt.-Col., D.S.O.  
Richardson, F. G., Major  
Rocke, Guy V. H., Capt.  
Roscoe, C., Capt., M.C.  
Ross, G. M., Capt.

#### S

Scott, A. W., Capt.  
Scott, H. G., Capt.  
Scougall, G. H., Capt.  
Shillam, H., Lieut.  
Somerville, A. L. H., 2nd Lieut.  
Spalding, J. W., Col.  
Stewart, J. S., Brig.-Gen., C.M.G.,  
D.S.O.  
Still, James, Capt.  
Stubbs, J. R., Lieut., M.C.  
Sutherland, R. D., Lieut.  
Svendsen, L. O., Lt.-Col.

#### T

Taylor, J. M., Capt., M.C.  
Taylor, W. P., Major  
Thompson, T. C., Capt., M.C.

#### U

Upper, R. C., Capt.

#### W

Wards, Thos., Lieut.  
Watkin, A. L., Lieut., D.C.M., M.M.  
Watson, D. J., Lieut.  
Watson, W. J., Lieut.  
Wheeler, R. L., Lt.-Col., O.B.E.  
Whiffin, H. E., Major  
White, A. E., Capt., M.C.  
White, A. T., Major  
White-Tait, W., Major  
Whyte, G. H., Lt.-Col., M.C.  
Wright, H., Lieut.  
Wynn, R. M., Lieut

# Lethbridge DRY GINGER ALE

*Snipes "Thirst"  
with its first  
shot . . . . .*

## THREE GREAT MIXERS

"Lethbridge" Dry Ginger Ale

"Lethbridge" Club Soda

"Lethbridge" Lime Rickey





## FARROW'S DRUG STORES

Trusses, Abdominal Belts  
Elastic Hosiery

---

**KODAKS**  
**Amateur Photo**  
**Finishing**

---

Sick Room Supplies  
Toiletries - Sundries

---

Stores at  
CALGARY, ROYALTIES, LONGVIEW

## CHALLENGER

The good and steady  
servant that goes  
quietly about its duty,  
good time all the time.

*Men's 10kt. yellow  
gold-filled, 17-jewel  
Challenger movement*  
35.00

Sold and Serviced  
by Birks from  
Coast to Coast



# BIRKS

## Ontario Laundry

LIMITED



### Dry Cleaners

---

Phone M 7931

---

Fifth Ave. and Second St. E.  
Calgary

Phone M 9266

Res. Phone H 2523

## Stanley Henderson

**FLORIST**

---

FLORAL  
ARRANGEMENTS  
FOR ANY OCCASION

---

814 First Street West  
Calgary - - Alberta